Pictorial index

Search by illustration

1	For safety and security	Make sure to read through them	
2	Instrument cluster	How to read the gauges and meters, the variety of warning lights and indicators, etc.	
3	Operation of each component	Opening and closing the doors and windows, adjustment before driving, etc.	
4	Driving	Operations and advices which are necessary for driving	
5	Interior features	Usage of the interior features, etc.	
6	Maintenance and care	Caring for your vehicle and maintenance procedures	
7	When trouble arises	What to do in case of malfunction or emergency	
8	Vehicle specifications	Vehicle specifications, customizable features, etc.	
9	For owners	Reporting safety defects for U.S. owners	
	Index	Search by symptom	
	IIIGEA	Search alphabetically	

For your information	. 8
Reading this manual	14
How to search	15
Pictorial index	16

For safety and security

1-1. For	safe use
----------	----------

2

	Before driving 26
	For safety drive 28
	Seat belts 30
	SRS airbags 36
	Front passenger occupant
	classification system 47
	Safety information
	for children 53
	Child restraint systems 54
	Installing child restraints 58
	Exhaust gas precautions 68
1-2.	Hybrid system
	Hybrid system features 69
	Hybrid system
	precautions73
1-3.	Theft deterrent system
	Immobilizer system79
	Alarm81
	Theft prevention labels 83

Instrument cluster

2

2.

Instrument cluster	
Warning lights and indicators	86
Gauges and meters	91
Multi-information display	96
Energy monitor/	
consumption screen1	02

Operation of each component

3-1.	Key information
	Keys108
3-2.	Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk
	Smart key system111
	Wireless remote control126
	Doors
	Trunk132
3-3.	Adjusting the seats
	Front seats136
	Driving position memory138
	Head restraints
3-4.	Adjusting the steering
•	wheel and mirrors
	Steering wheel146
	Inside rear view mirror 147
	Outside rear view
	mirrors149
3-5.	Opening, closing the windows and moon roof
	Power windows152
	Moon roof155

Driving

4-1.	Before driving
	Driving the vehicle 160
	Cargo and luggage 171
	Vehicle load limits 174
	Trailer towing 175
	Dinghy towing 176
4-2.	Driving procedures
	Power (ignition) switch 177
	EV drive mode 183
	Hybrid transmission 185
	Turn signal lever 188
	Parking brake 189
	Horn 190
4-3.	Operating the lights and
	wipers
	Headlight switch 191
	Automatic High Beam 195
	Fog light switch 200
	Windshield wipers and
	washer 201

4-4.	Refueling	
	Opening the fuel tank	
	cap206	
4-5.	Using the driving support systems	
	Cruise control211	1
	Dynamic radar cruise	
	control215	2
	Driving mode select switch230	2
	Driving assist systems232	
	Hill-start assist control237	3
	PCS (Pre-Collision	
	System)239	
	BSM	4
	(Blind Spot Monitor)245	
4-6.	Driving tips	
	Hybrid vehicle driving	5
	tips254	
	Winter driving tips256	
		6
		7

5 Interior features

5-1. Using the air conditioning system and defogger Automatic air conditioning system 262 Rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers 273 5-2. Using the interior lights Interior lights list 274 • Personal/interior light main switch 275 • Personal/ interior lights 275 • Ambient lights 276 5-3. Using the storage features List of storage features..... 277 • Glove box...... 278 • Console box 279 • Cup holders 280 Trunk features 286

5-4. Other interior features Sun visors and vanity Outside temperature display291 Power outlets......292 Seat heaters/ seat ventilators295 Rear sunshade299 Safety Connect......310

6 Maintenance and care

6-1.	Maintenance and care
	Cleaning and protecting
	the vehicle exterior
	Cleaning and protecting
	the vehicle interior
6-2.	Maintenance
	Maintenance
	requirements 328
	General maintenance 330
	Emission inspection and
	maintenance (I/M)
	programs
6-3.	Do-it-yourself
	maintenance
	Do-it-yourself service
	precautions 335
	Hood
	Positioning a floor jack 339
	Engine compartment 341
	12-volt battery 350
	Tires 354
	Tire inflation pressure 361
	Wheels 364
	Air conditioning filter
	Electronic key battery 369
	Checking and replacing
	fuses
	Light bulbs

When trouble arises

7-1.	Essential information	
	Emergency flashers	
7-2.	Steps to take in an emergency	
	If your vehicle needs to be towed400 If you think something is	
	wrong403 If a warning light turns on or a warning buzzer sounds404	
	If a warning message is displayed414	
	If you have a flat tire415 If the hybrid system will not start427 If the shift lever cannot	
	If the shifted from P	
	If the 12-volt battery is discharged432	
	overheats	



Index

What to do if	
(Troubleshooting)	480
Alphabetical index	486

For vehicles with a audio/navigation system, refer to the "NAVIGA-TION AND MULTIMEDIA SYSTEM OWNER'S MANUAL" for information regarding the audio/navigation system.



For your information

Main Owner's Manual

Please note that this manual applies to all models and explains all equipment, including options. Therefore, you may find some explanations for equipment not installed on your vehicle.

All specifications provided in this manual are current at the time of printing. However, because of the Toyota policy of continual product improvement, we reserve the right to make changes at any time without notice.

Depending on specifications, the vehicle shown in the illustrations may differ from your vehicle in terms of color and equipment.

Noise from under vehicle after turning off the hybrid system

Approximately five hours after the hybrid system is turned off, you may hear sound coming from under the vehicle for several minutes. This is the sound of a fuel evaporation leakage check and, it does not indicate a malfunction.

Accessories, spare parts and modification of your Toyota

A wide variety of non-genuine spare parts and accessories for Toyota vehicles are currently available in the market. You should know that Toyota does not warrant these products and is not responsible for their performance, repair, or replacement, or for any damage they may cause to, or adverse effect they may have on, your Toyota vehicle.

This vehicle should not be modified with non-genuine Toyota products. Modification with non-genuine Toyota products could affect its performance, safety or durability, and may even violate governmental regulations. In addition, damage or performance problems resulting from the modification may not be covered under warranty.

Installation of a mobile two-way radio system

The installation of a mobile two-way radio system in your vehicle could affect electronic systems such as:

- Multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system
- Dynamic radar cruise control system
- Cruise control system
- Anti-lock brake system
- SRS airbag system
- Seat belt pretensioner system

Be sure to check with your Toyota dealer for precautionary measures or special instructions regarding installation of a mobile two-way radio system.

High voltage parts and cables on the hybrid vehicles emit approximately the same amount of electromagnetic waves as the conventional gasoline powered vehicles or home electronic appliances despite of their electromagnetic shielding.

Unwanted noise may occur in the reception of the mobile two-way radio.

Vehicle data recordings

Your Toyota is equipped with several sophisticated computers that will record certain data, such as:

- Engine speed
- · Electric motor speed (traction motor speed)
- Accelerator status
- Brake status
- Vehicle speed
- Shift position
- Hybrid battery (traction battery) status

The recorded data varies according to the vehicle grade level and options with which it is equipped. Furthermore, these computers do not record conversations, sounds or pictures.

Data usage

Toyota may use the data recorded in these computers to diagnose malfunctions, conduct research and development, and improve quality.

Toyota will not disclose the recorded data to a third party except:

- With the consent of the vehicle owner or with the consent of the lessee if the vehicle is leased
- In response to an official request by the police, a court of law or a government agency
- · For use by Toyota in a lawsuit
- For research purposes where the data is not tied to a specific vehicle or vehicle owner
- Usage of data collected through Safety Connect (U.S. mainland only) If your Toyota has Safety Connect and if you have subscribed to those services, please refer to the Safety Connect Telematics Subscription Service Agreement for information on data collected and its usage.

Event data recorder

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an air bag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less.

The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- · How various systems in your vehicle were operating;
- Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were buckled/fastened;
- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal; and,
- · How fast the vehicle was traveling.

These data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

NOTE: EDR data are recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) are recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

Disclosure of the EDR data

Toyota will not disclose the data recorded in an EDR to a third party except when:

- An agreement from the vehicle's owner (or the lessee for a leased vehicle) is obtained
- In response to an official request by the police, a court of law or a government agency
- For use by Toyota in a lawsuit

However, if necessary, Toyota may:

- · Use the data for research on vehicle safety performance
- Disclose the data to a third party for research purposes without disclosing information about the specific vehicle or vehicle owner

Scrapping of your Toyota

The SRS airbag and seat belt pretensioner devices in your Toyota contain explosive chemicals. If the vehicle is scrapped with the airbags and seat belt pretensioners left as they are, this may cause an accident such as fire. Be sure to have the systems of the SRS airbag and seat belt pretensioner removed and disposed of by a qualified service shop or by your Toyota dealer before you scrap your vehicle.

Perchlorate Material

Special handling may apply, See www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate.

Your vehicle has components that may contain perchlorate. These components may include airbag, seat belt pretensioners, and wireless remote control batteries.

A CAUTION

General precautions while driving

Driving under the influence: Never drive your vehicle when under the influence of alcohol or drugs that have impaired your ability to operate your vehicle. Alcohol and certain drugs delay reaction time, impair judgment and reduce coordination, which could lead to an accident that could result in death or serious injury.

Defensive driving: Always drive defensively. Anticipate mistakes that other drivers or pedestrians might make and be ready to avoid accidents.

Driver distraction: Always give your full attention to driving. Anything that distracts the driver, such as adjusting controls, talking on a cellular phone or reading can result in a collision with resulting death or serious injury to you, your occupants or others.

General precaution regarding children's safety

Never leave children unattended in the vehicle, and never allow children to have or use the key.

Children may be able to start the vehicle or shift the vehicle into neutral. There is also a danger that children may injure themselves by playing with the windows, the moon roof, or other features of the vehicle. In addition, heat build-up or extremely cold temperatures inside the vehicle can be fatal to children.

A CAUTION

Hybrid battery (traction battery)

Never resell, hand over or modify the hybrid battery. To prevent accidents, hybrid batteries that have been removed from a disposed vehicle are collected through Toyota dealers. Do not dispose of the battery yourself.

Unless the battery is properly collected, the following may occur, resulting in death or serious injury:

- The hybrid battery may be illegally disposed of or dumped, and someone may touch a high voltage part, resulting in an electric shock.
- The hybrid battery is intended to be used exclusively with your hybrid vehicle. If the hybrid battery is used outside of your vehicle or modified in any way, accidents such as electric shock, heat generation, smoke generation, an explosion and electrolyte leakage may occur.

When reselling or handing over your vehicle, the possibility of an accident is extremely high because the person receiving the vehicle may not be aware of these dangers.

Disposal of the hybrid battery (traction battery)

If your vehicle is disposed of without the hybrid battery having been removed, there is a danger of serious electric shock if high voltage parts, cables and their connectors are touched. In the event that your vehicle must be disposed of, the hybrid battery must be disposed of by your Toyota dealer or a qualified service shop. If the hybrid battery is not disposed of properly, it may cause electric shock that can result in death or serious injury.

Reading this manual

CAUTION:

Explains something that, if not obeyed, could cause death or serious injury to people.

NOTICE:

Explains something that, if not obeyed, could cause damage to or a malfunction in the vehicle or its equipment.

- $1_{2_{3}}$ ··· Indicates operating or working procedures. Follow the steps in numerical order.
- Indicates the action (pushing, turning, etc.) used to operate switches and other devices.
- □ Indicates the outcome of an operation (e.g. a lid opens).
- Indicates the component or position being explained.
- Means "Do not", "Do not do this", or "Do not let this happen".





How to search

Searching by name

• Alphabetical indexP. 486



- Searching by installation position
 - Pictorial index.....P. 16



- Searching by symptom or sound
 - What to do if... (Troubleshooting)......P. 480

Searching by title

• Table of contentsP. 2





16 Pictorial index

Pictorial index

Exterior



4	Windshield wipersP. 201Precautions against winter seasonP. 256Precautions against car washP. 323
5	Fuel filler doorP. 206Refueling method.P. 206Fuel type/fuel tank capacityP. 446
6	TiresP. 354Tire size/inflation pressureP. 451Winter tires/tire chainP. 256Checking/rotation/tire pressure warning systemP. 354Coping with flat tiresP. 415
7	Hood P. 338 Opening P. 338 Engine oil P. 447 Coping with overheat P. 436

Light bulbs of the exterior lights for driving (Replacing method: P. 382, Wattages: P. 452)

8	Headlights/parking lights/side marker lights/	
	daytime running lights	P. 191
9	Fog lights [*]	P. 200
(10)	Turn signal lights	P. 188
(11)	Stop/tail lights	
-	Hill-start assist control	P. 237
(12)	License plate lights	P. 191
(13)	Back-up lights	
-	Shifting the shift lever to R	P. 185

*: If equipped

18 Pictorial index

Instrument panel



AVALON_HV_U (OM41457U)

4	Multi-information display Display Display Energy monitor When the warning messages are displayed	P. 96 P. 102
5	Turn signal lever F Headlight switch F Headlights/parking lights/tail lights/daytime running lights F Fog lights*1 F	P. 191 P. 191
6	Windshield wiper and washer switch F Usage F Adding washer fluid F	P. 201
$\overline{7}$	Hood lock release lever F	P. 338
8	Tilt and telescopic steering lock release lever	ን. 146
9	Air conditioning system F Usage F Rear window defogger F	P. 262
10	Audio/Navigation system ^{*2}	
(11)	Glove box F	ን. 278
(12)	Clock	?. 289

*1: If equipped

*2: Refer to "NAVIGATION AND MULTIMEDIA SYSTEM OWNER'S MANUAL".

20 Pictorial index

Switches



AVALON_HV_U (OM41457U)



*1: If equipped *2: Refer to "NAVIGATION AND MULTIMEDIA SYSTEM OWNER'S MANUAL".

22 Pictorial index

Interior



Pictorial index



*1: If equipped *2: Refer to "NAVIGATION AND MULTIMEDIA SYSTEM OWNER'S MANUAL".



 $$^{\star 2}$$: The illustration shows the front, but they are also equipped in the rear.

AVALON_HV_U (OM41457U)

For safety and security

1

1-1. For safe use

	Before driving 26
	For safety drive 28
	Seat belts 30
	SRS airbags 36
	Front passenger occupant classification system 47
	Safety information
	for children 53
	Child restraint systems 54
	Installing child restraints 58
	Exhaust gas precautions 68
1-2.	Hybrid system
	Hybrid system features 69
	Hybrid system
	precautions73
1-3.	Theft deterrent system
	Immobilizer system 79
	Alarm 81
	Theft prevention labels 83

26 1-1. For safe use

Before driving

Floor mat

Use only floor mats designed specifically for vehicles of the same model and model year as your vehicle. Fix them securely in place onto the carpet.

1 Insert the retaining hooks (clips) into the floor mat eyelets.



- 2 Turn the upper knob of each retaining hook (clip) to secure the floor mats in place.
 - *: Always align the \bigtriangleup marks.



The shape of the retaining hooks (clips) may differ from that shown in the illustration.

1-1. For safe use

A CAUTION

Observe the following precautions.

Failure to do so may cause the driver's floor mat to slip, possibly interfering with the pedals while driving. An unexpectedly high speed may result or it may become difficult to stop the vehicle. This could lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

When installing the driver's floor mat

- Do not use floor mats designed for other models or different model year vehicles, even if they are Toyota Genuine floor mats.
- Only use floor mats designed for the driver's seat.
- Always install the floor mat securely using the retaining hooks (clips) provided.
- Do not use two or more floor mats on top of each other.
- Do not place the floor mat bottom-side up or upside-down.

Before driving

- Check that the floor mat is securely fixed in the correct place with all the provided retaining hooks (clips). Be especially careful to perform this check after cleaning the floor.
- With the hybrid system stopped and the shift lever in P, fully depress each pedal to the floor to make sure it does not interfere with the floor mat.



27

For safety and security

For safety drive

For safe driving, adjust the seat and mirror to an appropriate position before driving.

Correct driving posture

- (1) Adjust the angle of the seatback so that you are sitting straight up and so that you do not have to lean forward to steer. (\rightarrow P. 136)
- (2) Adjust the seat so that you can depress the pedals fully and so that your arms bend slightly at the elbow when gripping the steering wheel. (→P. 136)
- ③ Adjust the tilt and telescopic positions of the steering wheel downward so the airbag is facing your chest. (→P. 146)
- ④ Lock the head restraint in place with the center of the head restraint closest to the top of your ears. (→P. 143)
- (5) Wear the seat belt correctly. $(\rightarrow P. 30)$

Correct use of the seat belts

Make sure that all occupants are wearing their seat belts before driving the vehicle. (\rightarrow P. 30)

Use a child restraint system appropriate for the child until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt. $(\rightarrow P. 54)$



Adjusting the mirrors

Make sure that you can see backward clearly by adjusting the inside and outside rear view mirrors properly. (\rightarrow P. 147, 149)

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.		1
Do not adjust the position of the driver's seat while driving. Doing so could cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.		For safe
Do not place a cushion between the driver or passenger and the seatback. A cushion may prevent correct posture from being achieved, and reduce the effectiveness of the seat belt and head restraint.		safety and se
 Do not place anything under the front seats. Objects placed under the front seats may become jammed in the seat tracks and stop the seat from locking in place. This may lead to an accident and the adjustment mechanism may also be damaged. 		security
 When driving over long distances, take regular breaks before you start to feel tired. Also, if you feel tired or sleepy while driving, do not force yourself to con- tinue driving and take a break immediately. 		

1-1. For safe use

Seat belts

Make sure that all occupants are wearing their seat belts before driving the vehicle.

Correct use of the seat belts

- Extend the shoulder belt so that it comes fully over the shoulder, but does not come into contact with the neck or slide off the shoulder.
- Position the lap belt as low as possible over the hips.
- Adjust the position of the seatback. Sit up straight and well back in the seat.



• Do not twist the seat belt.

Fastening and releasing the seat belt

- (1) To fasten the seat belt, push the plate into the buckle until a click sound is heard.
- (2) To release the seat belt, press the release button.



1-1. For safe use

Adjusting the seat belt shoulder anchor height (front seats)

- (1) Push the seat belt shoulder anchor down while pressing the release button.
- (2) Push the seat belt shoulder anchor up.

Move the height adjuster up and down as needed until you hear a click.

Seat belt pretensioners (front seats)

The pretensioners help the seat belts to quickly restrain the occupants by retracting the seat belts when the vehicle is subjected to certain types of severe frontal collision.

The pretensioners also activate when the vehicle is subjected to certain types of severe side collision.

The pretensioners do not activate in the event of a minor frontal impact, a minor side impact, a rear impact or a vehicle rollover.

Pre-collision seat belts (front seats of vehicles with pre-collision system)

If the system determines that a collision is unavoidable, the front seat belts will retract before the collision. (\rightarrow P. 239)



CTY1

Emergency locking retractor (ELR)

The retractor will lock the belt during a sudden stop or on impact. It may also lock if you lean forward too quickly. A slow, easy motion will allow the belt to extend so that you can move around fully.

Automatic locking retractor (ALR)

When a passenger's shoulder belt is completely extended and then retracted even slightly, the belt is locked in that position and cannot be extended. This feature is used to hold the child restraint system (CRS) firmly. To free the belt again, fully retract the belt and then pull the belt out once more. (\rightarrow P. 58)

Child seat belt usage

The seat belts of your vehicle were principally designed for persons of adult size.

•Use a child restraint system appropriate for the child, until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt. (\rightarrow P. 54)

●When the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt, follow the instructions regarding seat belt usage. (→P. 30)

Replacing the belt after the pretensioner has been activated

If the vehicle is involved in multiple collisions, the pretensioner will activate for the first collision, but will not activate for the second or subsequent collisions.

Seat belt extender

If your seat belts cannot be fastened securely because they are not long enough, a personalized seat belt extender is available from your Toyota dealer free of charge.



1-1. For safe use

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of injury in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident. Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- Wearing a seat belt
 - Ensure that all passengers wear a seat belt.
- Always wear a seat belt properly.
- Each seat belt should be used by one person only. Do not use a seat belt for more than one person at once, including children.
- Toyota recommends that children be seated in the rear seat and always use a seat belt and/or an appropriate child restraint system.
- To achieve a proper seating position, do not recline the seat more than necessary. The seat belt is most effective when the occupants are sitting up straight and well back in the seats.
- Do not wear the shoulder belt under your arm.
- Always wear your seat belt low and snug across your hips.

Pregnant women

Obtain medical advice and wear the seat belt in the proper way. $(\rightarrow P. 30)$

Women who are pregnant should position the lap belt as low as possible over the hips in the same manner as other occupants, extending the shoulder belt completely over the shoulder and avoiding belt contact with the rounding of the abdominal area.

If the seat belt is not worn properly, not only the pregnant woman, but also the fetus could suffer death or serious injury as a result of sudden braking or a collision.



33

For safety and security

34 1-1. For safe use

People suffering illness

Obtain medical advice and wear the seat belt in the proper way. $(\rightarrow P. 30)$

When children are in the vehicle

Do not allow children to play with the seat belt. If the seat belt becomes twisted around a child's neck, it may lead to choking or other serious injuries that could result in death.

If this occurs and the buckle cannot be unfastened, scissors should be used to cut the belt.

Seat belt pretensioners

If the pretensioner has activated, the SRS warning light will come on. In that case, the seat belt cannot be used again and must be replaced at your Toyota dealer.

Adjustable shoulder anchor

Always make sure the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of your shoulder. The belt should be kept away from your neck, but not falling off your shoulder. Failure to do so could reduce the amount of protection in an accident and cause death or serious injuries in the event of a sudden stop, sudden swerve or accident. (\rightarrow P. 31)

Seat belt damage and wear

- Do not damage the seat belts by allowing the belt, plate, or buckle to be jammed in the door.
- Inspect the seat belt system periodically. Check for cuts, fraying, and loose parts. Do not use a damaged seat belt until it is replaced. Damaged seat belts cannot protect an occupant from death or serious injury.
- Ensure that the belt and plate are locked and the belt is not twisted.
 If the seat belt does not function correctly, immediately contact your Toyota dealer.
- Replace the seat assembly, including the belts, if your vehicle has been involved in a serious accident, even if there is no obvious damage.
- Do not attempt to install, remove, modify, disassemble or dispose of the seat belts. Have any necessary repairs carried out by your Toyota dealer. Inappropriate handling may lead to incorrect operation.

Using a seat belt extender

- Do not wear the seat belt extender if you can fasten the seat belt without the extender.
- Do not use the seat belt extender when installing a child restraint system because the belt will not securely hold the child restraint system, increasing the risk of death or serious injury in the event of an accident.
- The personalized extender may not be safe on another vehicle, when used by another person, or at a different seating position other than the one originally intended.

<u> NOTICE</u>

When using a seat belt extender

When releasing the seat belt, press on the buckle release button on the extender, not on the seat belt.

This helps prevent damage to the vehicle interior and the extender itself.

36 1-1. For safe use

SRS airbags

The SRS airbags inflate when the vehicle is subjected to certain types of severe impacts that may cause significant injury to the occupants. They work together with the seat belts to help reduce the risk of death or serious injury.



AVALON_HV_U (OM41457U)
 SRS front airbags 	
 SRS driver airbag/front passenger airbag Can help protect the head and chest of the driver and front passenger from impact with interior components 	
 (2) SRS knee airbags Can help provide driver and front passenger protection 	
 SRS side and curtain shield airbags 	
 ③ SRS front side airbags Can help protect the torso of the front seat occupants 	-
SRS rear side airbags Can help protect the torso of occupants in the rear outer seats	
 ④ SRS curtain shield airbags Can help protect primarily the head of occupants in the outer seats 	

For safetv and securi

AVALON_HV_U (OM41457U)



Your vehicle is equipped with ADVANCED AIRBAGS designed based on the US motor vehicle safety standards (FMVSS208). The airbag sensor assembly (ECU) controls airbag deployment based on information obtained from the sensors etc. shown in the system components diagram above. This information includes crash severity and occupant information. As the airbags deploy, a chemical reaction in the inflators quickly fills the airbags with non-toxic gas to help restrain the motion of the occupants.

SRS airbag precautions

Observe the following precautions regarding the SRS airbags. Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

 The driver and all passengers in the vehicle must wear their seat belts properly.

The SRS airbags are supplemental devices to be used with the seat belts.

• The SRS driver airbag deploys with considerable force, and can cause death or serious injury especially if the driver is very close to the airbag. The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) advises:

Since the risk zone for the driver's airbag is the first 2 - 3 in. (50 - 75 mm) of inflation, placing yourself 10 in. (250 mm) from your driver airbag provides you with a clear margin of safety. This distance is measured from the center of the steering wheel to your breastbone. If you sit less than 10 in. (250 mm) away now, you can change your driving position in several ways:

- Move your seat to the rear as far as you can while still reaching the pedals comfortably.
- Slightly recline the back of the seat.

Although vehicle designs vary, many drivers can achieve the 10 in. (250 mm) distance, even with the driver seat all the way forward, simply by reclining the back of the seat somewhat. If reclining the back of your seat makes it hard to see the road, raise yourself by using a firm, non-slippery cushion, or raise the seat if your vehicle has that feature.

• If your steering wheel is adjustable, tilt it downward. This points the airbag toward your chest instead of your head and neck.

The seat should be adjusted as recommended by NHTSA above, while still maintaining control of the foot pedals, steering wheel, and your view of the instrument panel controls.

40

SRS airbag precautions

If the seat belt extender has been connected to the front seat belt buckle but the seat belt extender has not also been fastened to the latch plate of the seat belt, the SRS front airbags will judge that the driver and front passenger are wearing the seat belt even though the seat belt has not been connected. In this case, the SRS front airbags may not activate correctly in a collision, resulting in death or serious injury in the event of a collision. Be sure to wear the seat belt with the seat belt extender.



- The SRS front passenger airbag also deploys with considerable force, and can cause death or serious injury especially if the front passenger is very close to the airbag. The front passenger seat should be as far from the airbag as possible with the seatback adjusted, so the front passenger sits upright.
- Improperly seated and/or restrained infants and children can be killed or seriously injured by a deploying airbag. An infant or child who is too small to use a seat belt should be properly secured using a child restraint system. Toyota strongly recommends that all infants and children be placed in the rear seats of the vehicle and properly restrained. The rear seats are safer for infants and children than the front passenger seat. (→P. 54)
- Do not sit on the edge of the seat or lean against the dashboard.



SRS airbag precautions

- Do not allow a child to stand in front of the SRS front passenger airbag unit or sit on the knees of a front passenger.
- Do not allow the front seat occupants to hold items on their knees.
- Do not lean against the door, the roof side rail or the front, side and rear pillars.
- Do not allow anyone to kneel on the passenger seats toward the door or put their head or hands outside the vehicle.
- Do not attach anything to or lean anything against areas such as the dashboard, steering wheel pad and lower portion of the instrument panel.
 These items can become projectiles when the SRS driver, front passenger and knee airbags deploy.







41

For safety and security

CAUTION

SRS airbag precautions

 Do not attach anything to areas such as a door, windshield glass, side door glass, front or rear pillar, roof side rail and assist grip.



- Do not hang coat hangers or hard objects on the coat hooks. All of these items could become projectiles and may cause death or serious injury, should the SRS curtain shield airbags deploy.
- If a vinyl cover is put on the area where the SRS knee airbag will deploy, be sure to remove it.
- Do not use seat accessories which cover the parts where the SRS side airbags inflate as they may interfere with inflation of the airbags. Such accessories may prevent the side airbags from activating correctly, disable the system or cause the side airbags to inflate accidentally, resulting in death or serious injury.
- Do not strike or apply significant levels of force to the area of the SRS airbag components.

Doing so can cause the SRS airbags to malfunction.

- Do not touch any of the component parts immediately after the SRS airbags have deployed (inflated) as they may be hot.
- If breathing becomes difficult after the SRS airbags have deployed, open a door or window to allow fresh air in, or leave the vehicle if it is safe to do so. Wash off any residue as soon as possible to prevent skin irritation.
- If the areas where the SRS airbags are stored, such as the steering wheel pad, and front and rear pillar garnishes are damaged or cracked, have them replaced by your Toyota dealer.

AVALON_HV_U (OM41457U)

Modification and disposal of SRS airbag system components

Do not dispose of your vehicle or perform any of the following modifications without consulting your Toyota dealer. The SRS airbags may malfunction or deploy (inflate) accidentally, causing death or serious injury.

- Installation, removal, disassembly and repair of the SRS airbags
- Repairs, modifications, removal or replacement of the steering wheel, instrument panel, dashboard, seats or seat upholstery, front, side and rear pillars or roof side rails
- Repairs or modifications of the front fender, front bumper, or side of the occupant compartment
- Installation of a grille guard (bull bars, kangaroo bar, etc.), snow plows or winches
- Modifications to the vehicle's suspension system
- Installation of electronic devices such as mobile two-way radios and CD players
- Modifications to your vehicle for a person with a physical disability

If the SRS airbags deploy (inflate)

- Bruising and slight abrasions may result from contact with a deploying (inflating) SRS airbag.
- A loud noise and white powder will be emitted.
- Parts of the airbag module (steering wheel hub, airbag cover and inflator) as well as the seats, parts of the front and rear pillars, and roof side rails may be hot for several minutes. The airbag itself may also be hot.
- The windshield may crack.
- For Safety Connect subscribers, if the SRS airbags deploy or in the event of a severe rear-end collision, the system is designed to send an emergency call to the response center, notifying them of the vehicle's location (without needing to push the "SOS" button) and an agent will attempt to speak with the occupants to ascertain the level of emergency and assistance required. If the occupants are unable to communicate, the agent automatically treats the call as an emergency and helps to dispatch the necessary emergency services. (→P. 310)

43

For safety and security

SRS airbag deployment conditions (SRS front airbags)

 The SRS front airbags will deploy in the event of an impact that exceeds the set threshold level (the level of force corresponding to an approximately 12 -18 mph [20 - 30 km/h] frontal collision with a fixed wall that does not move or deform).

However, this threshold velocity will be considerably higher in the following situations:

- If the vehicle strikes an object, such as a parked vehicle or sign pole, which can move or deform on impact
- If the vehicle is involved in an underride collision, such as a collision in which the front of the vehicle "underrides", or goes under, the bed of a truck
- Depending on the type of collision, it is possible that only the seat belt pretensioners will activate.
- The SRS front airbags for the front passenger will not activate if there is no passenger sitting in the front passenger seat. However, the SRS front airbags for the front passenger may deploy if luggage is put in the seat, even if the seat is unoccupied. (→P. 47)

SRS airbag deployment conditions (SRS side and curtain shield airbags)

- The SRS side and curtain shield airbags will deploy in the event of an impact that exceeds the set threshold level (the level of force corresponding to the impact force produced by an approximately 3300 lb. [1500 kg] vehicle colliding with the vehicle cabin from a direction perpendicular to the vehicle orientation at an approximate speed of 12 18 mph [20 30 km/h]).
- The SRS curtain shield airbags may also deploy in the event of a severe frontal collision.
- Conditions under which the SRS airbags may deploy (inflate), other than a collision

The SRS front airbags may also deploy if a serious impact occurs to the underside of your vehicle. Some examples are shown in the illustration.

- Hitting a curb, edge of pavement or hard surface
- Falling into or jumping over a deep hole
- Landing hard or falling



Types of collisions that may not deploy the SRS airbags (SRS front airbags)

The SRS front airbags do not generally inflate if the vehicle is involved in a side or rear collision, if it rolls over, or if it is involved in a low-speed frontal collision. But, whenever a collision of any type causes sufficient forward deceleration of the vehicle, deployment of the SRS front airbags may occur.

- Collision from the side
- Collision from the rear
- Vehicle rollover



Types of collisions that may not deploy the SRS airbags (SRS side and curtain shield airbags)

The SRS side and curtain shield airbags may not activate if the vehicle is subjected to a collision from the side at certain angles, or a collision to the side of the vehicle body other than the passenger compartment.

- Collision from the side to the vehicle body other than the passenger compartment
- Collision from the side at an angle



The SRS side and curtain shield airbags do not generally inflate if the vehicle is involved in a frontal or rear collision, if it rolls over, or if it is involved in a low-speed side collision.

- Collision from the front*
- Collision from the rear

Vehicle rollover

*: Depending on the conditions and type of accident, the curtain shield airbags may deploy (inflate) upon frontal impact.



When to contact your Toyota dealer

In the following cases, the vehicle will require inspection and/or repair. Contact your Toyota dealer as soon as possible.

• Any of the SRS airbags have been inflated.

 The front of the vehicle is damaged or deformed, or was involved in an accident that was not severe enough to cause the SRS front airbags and SRS curtain shield airbags to inflate.



- A portion of a door is damaged or deformed, or the vehicle was involved in an accident that was not severe enough to cause the SRS side and curtain shield airbags to inflate.
- The pad section of the steering wheel, dashboard near the front passenger airbag or lower portion of the instrument panel is scratched, cracked, or other-
- The surface of the seats with the side airbag is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.

wise damaged.



CTY11AX007



 The portion of the front pillars, rear pillars or roof side rail garnishes (padding) containing the curtain shield airbags inside is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.



Front passenger occupant classification system

Your vehicle is equipped with a front passenger occupant classification system. This system detects the conditions of the front passenger seat and activates or deactivates the devices for the front passenger.



For safety and security

(1) SRS warning light

(2) Seat belt reminder light

(3) "AIR BAG OFF" indicator light

(4) "AIR BAG ON" indicator light

Condition and operation in the front passenger occupant classification system

Adult*1

Indicator/ warning light	"AIR BAG ON" and "AIR BAG OFF" indicator lights	"AIR BAG ON"
	SRS warning light	Off
	Seat belt reminder light	Off ^{*2} or flashing ^{*3}
Devices	Front passenger airbag	
	Side airbag on the front passenger seat	
	Curtain shield airbag in the front passenger side	Activated
	Front passenger knee airbag	
	Front passenger's seat belt pretensioner	

■ Child*4

Indicator/ warning light	"AIR BAG ON" and "AIR BAG OFF" indicator lights	"AIR BAG OFF" or "AIR BAG ON" ^{*4}
	SRS warning light	Off
	Seat belt reminder light	Off ^{*2} or flashing ^{*3}
Devices	Front passenger airbag	Deactivated or activated*4
	Side airbag on the front passenger seat	Activated
	Curtain shield airbag in the front passenger side	Activated
	Front passenger knee airbag	Deactivated or activated*4
	Front passenger's seat belt pretensioner	Activated

Indicator/ warning light	"AIR BAG ON" and "AIR BAG OFF" indicator lights	"AIR BAG OFF" ^{*6}
	SRS warning light	Off
	Seat belt reminder light	Off ^{*2} or flashing ^{*3}
Devices	Front passenger airbag	Deactivated
	Side airbag on the front passenger seat	Activated
	Curtain shield airbag in the front passenger side	Activated
	Front passenger knee airbag	Deactivated
	Front passenger's seat belt pretensioner	Activated

Child restraint system with infant*5

Unoccupied

Indicator/ warning light	"AIR BAG ON" and "AIR BAG OFF" indicator lights	"AIR BAG OFF"
	SRS warning light	Off
	Seat belt reminder light	
Devices	Front passenger airbag	Deactivated
	Side airbag on the front passenger seat	Activated
	Curtain shield airbag in the front passenger side	Adivated
	Front passenger knee airbag	Deactivated
	Front passenger's seat belt pretensioner	Activated

AVALON_HV_U (OM41457U)

■ There is a malfunction in the system

Indicator/ warning light	"AIR BAG ON" and "AIR BAG OFF" indicator lights	"AIR BAG OFF"	
	SRS warning light	On	
	Seat belt reminder light		
Devices	Front passenger airbag	Deactivated	
	Side airbag on the front passenger seat	Activated	
	Curtain shield airbag in the front passenger side	Adivaled	
	Front passenger knee airbag	Deactivated	
	Front passenger's seat belt pretensioner	Activated	

*1: The system judges a person of adult size as an adult. When a smaller adult sits in the front passenger seat, the system may not recognize him/her as an adult depending on his/her physique and posture.

- *2: In the event the front passenger is wearing a seat belt.
- *3 : In the event the front passenger does not wear a seat belt.
- *4: For some children, child in seat, child in booster seat or child in convertible seat, the system may not recognize him/her as a child. Factors which may affect this can be the physique or posture.
- *5: Never install a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat. A forward-facing child restraint system should only be installed on the front passenger seat when it is unavoidable. (\rightarrow P. 54)
- *6: In case the indicator light is not illuminated, consult this manual on how to install the child restraint system properly. (\rightarrow P. 58)

Front passenger occupant classification system precautions

Observe the following precautions regarding the front passenger occupant classification system.

Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- Wear the seat belt properly.
- Make sure the front passenger's seat belt plate has not been left inserted into the buckle before someone sits in the front passenger seat.
- Make sure the "AIR BAG OFF" indicator light is not illuminated when using the seat belt extender for the front passenger seat. If the "AIR BAG OFF" indicator light is illuminated, disconnect the extender tongue from the seat belt buckle, and reconnect the seat belt. Reconnect the seat belt extender after making sure the "AIR BAG ON" indicator light is illuminated. If you use the seat belt extender while the "AIR BAG OFF" indicator light is illuminated, the SRS airbags for the front passenger will not activate correctly, which could cause death or serious injury in the event of a collision.
- Do not apply a heavy load to the front passenger seat or equipment (e.g. seatback pockets or armrest).
- Do not put weight on the front passenger seat by putting your hands or feet on the front passenger seat seatback from the rear passenger seat.
- Do not let a rear passenger lift the front passenger seat with their feet or press on the seatback with their legs.
- Do not put objects under the front passenger seat.

For safety and security

Front passenger occupant classification system precautions

- Do not recline the front passenger seatback so far that it touches a rear seat. This may cause the "AIR BAG OFF" indicator light to be illuminated, which indicates that the SRS airbags for the front passenger will not deploy in the event of a severe accident. If the seatback touches the rear seat, return the seatback to a position where it does not touch the rear seat. Keep the front passenger seatback as upright as possible when the vehicle is moving. Reclining the seatback excessively may lessen the effectiveness of the seat belt system.
- If an adult sits in the front passenger seat, the "AIR BAG ON" indicator light is illuminated. If the "AIR BAG OFF" indicator is illuminated, ask the passenger to sit up straight, well back in the seat, feet on the floor, and with the seat belt worn correctly. If the "AIR BAG OFF" indicator still remains illuminated, either ask the passenger to move to the rear seat, or if that is not possible, move the front passenger seat fully rearward.
- When it is unavoidable to install a forward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat, install the child restraint system on the front passenger seat in the proper order. (→P. 58)
- Do not modify or remove the front seats.
- Do not kick the front passenger seat or subject it to severe impact. Otherwise, the SRS warning light may come on to indicate a malfunction of the detection system. In this case, contact your Toyota dealer immediately.
- Child restraint systems installed on the rear seat should not contact the front seatbacks.
- Do not use a seat accessory, such as a cushion and seat cover, that covers the seat cushion surface.
- Do not modify or replace the upholstery of the front seat.

Safety information for children

Observe the following precautions when children are in the vehicle.

Use a child restraint system appropriate for the child, until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt.

- It is recommended that children sit in the rear seats to avoid accidental contact with the shift lever, wiper switch etc.
- Use the rear door child-protector lock or the window lock switch to avoid children opening the door while driving or operating the power window accidentally.
- Do not let small children operate equipment which may catch or pinch body parts, such as the power window, hood, trunk, seats etc.

A CAUTION

Never leave children unattended in the vehicle, and never allow children to have or use the key.

Children may be able to start the vehicle or shift the vehicle into neutral. There is also a danger that children may injure themselves by playing with the windows, the moon roof or other features of the vehicle. In addition, heat build-up or extremely cold temperatures inside the vehicle can be fatal to children.

AVALON_HV_U (OM41457U)

Child restraint systems

A child restraint system for a small child or baby must itself be properly restrained on the seat with the LATCH anchors or the lap portion of the lap/shoulder belt.

The laws of all 50 states of the U.S.A. and Canada now require the use of child restraint systems.

Points to remember

Studies have shown that installing a child restraint on a rear seat is much safer than installing one on the front passenger seat.

- Choose a child restraint system that suits your vehicle and is appropriate to the age and size of the child.
- For installation details, follow the instructions provided with the child restraint system.

General installation instructions are provided in this manual. $(\rightarrow P. 58)$

Types of child restraints

Child restraint systems are classified into the following 3 types according to the age and size of the child:

Rear facing — Infant seat/con Forward facing — Convertible seat
 seat



CTY11AX012

For safety and security





Selecting an appropriate child restraint system

- Use a child restraint system appropriate for the child until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt.
- If the child is too large for a child restraint system, sit the child on a rear seat and use the vehicle's seat belt. (→P. 30)

Child restraint precautions

- For effective protection in automobile accidents and sudden stops, a child must be properly restrained, using a seat belt or child restraint system depending on the age and size of the child. Holding a child in your arms is not a substitute for a child restraint system. In an accident, the child can be crushed against the windshield, or between you and the vehicle's interior.
- Toyota strongly urges the use of a proper child restraint system that conforms to the size of the child, installed on the rear seat. According to accident statistics, the child is safer when properly restrained in the rear seat than in the front seat.
- Never install a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat even if the "AIR BAG OFF" indicator light is illuminated. In the event of an accident, the force of the rapid inflation of the front passenger airbag can cause death or serious injury to the child if the rear-facing child restraint system is installed on the front passenger seat.
- A forward-facing child restraint system may be installed on the front passenger seat only when it is unavoidable. A child restraint system that requires a top tether strap should not be used in the front passenger seat since there is no top tether strap anchor for the front passenger seat. Adjust the seatback as upright as possible and always move the seat as far back as possible even if the "AIR BAG OFF" indicator light is illuminated, because the front passenger airbag could inflate with considerable speed and force. Otherwise, the child may be killed or seriously injured.
- Do not use the seat belt extender when installing a child restraint system on the front or rear passenger seat. If installing a child restraint system with the seat belt extender connected to the seat belt, the seat belt will not securely hold the child restraint system, which could cause death or serious injury to the child or other passengers in the event of an accident.
- Do not allow the child to lean his/her head or any part of his/her body against the door or the area of the seat, front and rear pillars or roof side rails from which the SRS side airbags or SRS curtain shield airbags deploy even if the child is seated in the child restraint system. It is dangerous if the SRS side airbags and curtain shield airbags inflate, and the impact could cause death or serious injury to the child.
- Make sure you have complied with all installation instructions provided by the child restraint manufacturer and that the system is properly secured. If it is not secured properly, it may cause death or serious injury to the child in the event of a sudden stop, sudden swerve or accident.

A CAUTION

When children are in the vehicle

Do not allow children to play with the seat belt. If the seat belt becomes twisted around a child's neck, it may lead to choking or other serious injuries that could result in death.

If this occurs and the buckle cannot be unfastened, scissors should be used to cut the belt.

When the child restraint system is not in use

- Keep the child restraint system properly secured on the seat even if it is not in use. Do not store the child restraint system unsecured in the passenger compartment.
- If it is necessary to detach the child restraint system, remove it from the vehicle or store it securely in the trunk. This will prevent it from injuring passengers in the event of a sudden stop, sudden swerve or accident.

58

Installing child restraints

Follow the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions. Firmly secure child restraints to the seats using the LATCH anchors or a seat belt. Attach the top tether strap when installing a child restraint.

The lap/shoulder belt can be used if your child restraint system is not compatible with the LATCH (Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children) system.

Child restraint LATCH anchors

LATCH anchors are provided for the outboard rear seats. (Buttons displaying the location of the anchors are attached to the seats.)

Seat belts equipped with a child restraint locking mechanism (ALR/ELR belts except driver's seat belt) (\rightarrow P. 32)

Anchor brackets (for top tether strap)

An anchor bracket is provided for each rear seat.







AVALON_HV_U (OM41457U)

Installation with LATCH system

- 1 Adjust the head restraint to the downmost position. (\rightarrow P. 143)
- 2 Widen the gap between the seat cushion and seatback slightly.
- 3 Rear left seat only: Slide the rear center seat belt to the side to prevent it from getting pinched in the lower anchorage.



► Type A

4 Latch the hooks of the lower straps onto the LATCH anchors. If the child restraint has a top tether strap, the top tether strap should be latched onto the top tether strap anchor.



For safety and security

- ► Type B
- 4 Latch the buckles onto the LATCH anchors. If the child restraint has a top tether strap, the top tether strap should be latched onto the top tether strap anchor.



Installing child restraints using a seat belt (child restraint lock function belt)

■ Rear-facing — Infant seat/convertible seat

1 Place the child restraint system on the rear seat facing the rear of the vehicle.



- 2 Run the seat belt through the child restraint system and insert the plate into the buckle. Make sure that the belt is not twisted.
- 3 Fully extend the shoulder belt and allow it to retract to put it in lock mode. In lock mode, the belt cannot be extended.





61

For safety and security

4 While pushing the child restraint system down into the rear seat, allow the shoulder belt to retract until the child restraint system is securely in place.

> After the shoulder belt has retracted to a point where there is no slack in the belt, pull the belt to check that it cannot be extended.



■ Forward-facing — Convertible seat

1 Adjust the head restraint to the downmost position. (\rightarrow P. 143)

2 Place the child restraint system on the seat facing the front of the vehicle.



- 3 Run the seat belt through the child restraint system and insert the plate into the buckle. Make sure that the belt is not twisted.
- 4 Fully extend the shoulder belt and allow it to retract to put it in lock mode. In lock mode, the belt cannot be extended.
- 5 While pushing the child restraint system into the rear seat, allow the shoulder belt to retract until the child restraint system is securely in place.

After the shoulder belt has retracted to a point where there is no slack in the belt, pull the belt to check that it cannot be extended.

[6] If the child restraint has a top tether strap, the top tether strap should be latched onto the top tether strap anchor. (\rightarrow P. 65)





63



CTY11AX0

Booster seat

- 1 Place the child restraint system on the seat facing the front of the vehicle.
- 2 Sit the child in the child restraint system. Fit the seat belt to the child restraint system according to the manufacturer's instructions and insert the plate into the buckle. Make sure that the belt is not twisted.

Check that the shoulder belt is correctly positioned over the child's shoulder and that the lap belt is as low as possible. $(\rightarrow P. 30)$





Removing a child restraint installed with a seat belt

Push the buckle release button and fully retract the seat belt.



Child restraint systems with a top tether strap

- 1 Adjust the head restraint to the downmost position. (\rightarrow P. 143)
- 2 Secure the child restraint system using the seat belt or LATCH anchors.



3 Open the anchor bracket cover, latch the hook onto the anchor bracket and tighten the top tether strap.

Make sure the top tether strap is securely latched.



For safety and security

65

Laws and regulations pertaining to anchorages

The LATCH system conforms to FMVSS225 or CMVSS210.2. Child restraint systems conforming to FMVSS213 or CMVSS213 specifications can be used.

This vehicle is designed to conform to the SAE J1819.

AVALON_HV_U (OM41457U)

When installing a booster seat

To prevent the belt from going into ALR lock mode, do not fully extend the shoulder belt. ALR mode causes the belt to tighten only. This could cause injury or discomfort to the child. (\rightarrow P. 32)

When installing a child restraint system

Follow the directions given in the child restraint system installation manual and fix the child restraint system securely in place.

If the child restraint system is not correctly fixed in place, the child or other passengers may be seriously injured or even killed in the event of a sudden braking or an accident.

- If the driver's seat interferes with the child restraint system and prevents it from being attached correctly, attach the child restraint system to the right-hand rear seat.
- Adjust the front passenger seat so that it does not interfere with the child restraint system.
- Only put a forward-facing child restraint system on the front seat when unavoidable. When installing a forward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat, move the seat as far back as possible even if the "AIR BAG OFF" indicator light is illuminated. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury if the airbags deploy (inflate).





When installing a child restraint system

- When a booster seat is installed, always ensure that the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of the child's shoulder. The belt should be kept away from the child's neck, but not so that it could fall off the child's shoulder. Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury in the event of an accident or a sudden braking.
- Ensure that the belt and plate are securely locked and the seat belt is not twisted.
- Shake the child restraint system left and right, and forward and backward to ensure that it has been securely installed.
- After securing a child restraint system, never adjust the seat.
- Follow all installation instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.

Do not use a seat belt extender

If a seat belt extender is used when installing a child restraint system, the seat belt will not securely hold the child restraint system, which could cause death or serious injury to the child or other passengers in the event of a sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.

To correctly attach a child restraint system to the anchors

When using the LATCH anchors, be sure that there are no foreign objects around the anchors and that the seat belt is not caught behind the child restraint system. Make sure the child restraint system is securely attached, or it may cause death or serious injury to the child or other passengers in the event of a sudden braking or an accident.

AVALON_HV_U (OM41457U)

Exhaust gas precautions

Harmful substance to the human body is included in exhaust gases if inhaled.

A CAUTION

Exhaust gases include harmful carbon monoxide (CO), which is colorless and odorless. Observe the following precautions.

Failure to do so may cause exhaust gases to enter the vehicle and may lead to an accident caused by light-headedness, or may lead to death or a serious health hazard.

Important points while driving

- Keep the trunk lid closed.
- If you smell exhaust gases in the vehicle even when the trunk lid is closed, open the windows and have the vehicle inspected at your Toyota dealer as soon as possible.

When parking

- If the vehicle is in a poorly ventilated area or a closed area, such as a garage, stop the hybrid system.
- Do not leave the vehicle with the hybrid system on for a long time. If such a situation cannot be avoided, park the vehicle in an open space and ensure that exhaust fumes do not enter the vehicle interior.
- Do not leave the hybrid system operating in an area with snow build-up, or where it is snowing. If snowbanks build up around the vehicle while the hybrid system is operating, exhaust gases may collect and enter the vehicle.

Exhaust pipe

The exhaust system needs to be checked periodically. If there is a hole or crack caused by corrosion, damage to a joint or abnormal exhaust noise, be sure to have the vehicle inspected and repaired by your Toyota dealer.

Hybrid system features

Your vehicle is a hybrid vehicle. It has characteristics different from conventional vehicles. Be sure you are closely familiar with the characteristics of your vehicle, and operate with care.

The hybrid system combines the use of a gasoline engine and an electric motor (traction motor) according to driving conditions, improving fuel efficiency and reducing exhaust emissions.



(1) Gasoline engine

(2) Electric motor (traction motor)

70 1-2. Hybrid system

When stopped/during start off

The gasoline engine stops when the vehicle is stopped. During start off, the electric motor (traction motor) drives the vehicle. At slow speeds or when traveling down a gentle slope, the engine is stopped and the electric motor (traction motor) is used.

During normal driving

The gasoline engine is predominantly used. The electric motor (traction motor) charges the hybrid battery (traction battery) as necessary.

When accelerating sharply

When the accelerator pedal is depressed heavily, the power of the hybrid battery (traction battery) is added to that of the gasoline engine via the electric motor (traction motor).

When braking (regenerative braking)

The electric motor (traction motor) charges the hybrid battery (traction battery).

Vehicle proximity notification system

When driving with the gasoline engine stopped, a sound, which changes in accordance with the driving speed, will be played in order to warn people nearby of the vehicle's approach. The sound will stop when the vehicle speed exceeds approximately 15 mph (25 km/h).

Regenerative braking

In the following situations, kinetic energy is converted to electric energy and deceleration force can be obtained in conjunction with the recharging of the hybrid battery (traction battery).

- The accelerator pedal is released while driving with the shift position in D or S.
- The brake pedal is depressed while driving with the shift position in D or S.

EV indicator

The EV indicator comes on when driving the vehicle using only the electric motor (traction motor).



Conditions in which the gasoline engine may not stop

The gasoline engine starts and stops automatically. However, it may not stop automatically in the following conditions:

- During gasoline engine warm-up
- During hybrid battery (traction battery) charging
- When the temperature of the hybrid battery (traction battery) is high or low
- When the heater is switched on

Charging the hybrid battery (traction battery)

- As the gasoline engine charges the hybrid battery (traction battery), the battery does not need to be charged from an outside source. However, if the vehicle is left parked for a long time the hybrid battery will slowly discharge. For this reason, be sure to drive the vehicle at least once every few months for at least 30 minutes or 10 miles (16 km). If the hybrid battery becomes fully discharged and you are unable to jump-start the vehicle with the 12-volt battery, contact your Toyota dealer.
- If the shift lever is in N, the hybrid battery (traction battery) will not be charged. Always put the shift lever in P when the vehicle is stopped. When driving in heavy traffic, operate the vehicle with the shift lever in D or S to avoid discharging the battery.

Charging the 12-volt battery

→P. 433

72 1-2. Hybrid system

After the 12-volt battery has discharged or has been changed or removed

The gasoline engine may not stop even if the vehicle is running on the hybrid battery (traction battery). If this continues for a few days, contact your Toyota dealer.

Sounds and vibrations specific to a hybrid vehicle

There may be no engine sounds or vibration even though the vehicle is able to move. For safety, apply the parking brake and make sure to shift the shift position to P when parked.

The following sounds or vibrations may occur when the hybrid system is operating and are not a malfunction:

Motor sounds may be heard from under the vehicle.

- Sounds may be heard from the hybrid battery (traction battery) behind the rear seats when the hybrid system starts or stops.
- Sounds from the hybrid system may be heard when the trunk lid is open.
- Sounds may be heard from the hybrid transmission when the hybrid system starts or stops.
- Engine sounds may be heard when accelerating sharply.
- Sounds may be heard due to regenerative braking when the brake pedal is depressed.
- Vibration may be felt when the gasoline engine starts or stops.
- Cooling fan sounds may be heard from the air intake vents on the left side of the rear seatback.

Vehicle proximity notification system

In the following cases, the vehicle proximity notification system may be difficult for surrounding people to hear.

In very noisy areas

In the wind or the rain

Also, as the vehicle proximity notification system is installed on the front of the vehicle, it may be more difficult to hear from the rear of the vehicle compared to the front.

Maintenance, repair, recycling, and disposal

Contact your Toyota dealer regarding maintenance, repair, recycling and disposal. Do not dispose of the vehicle yourself.
1-2. Hybrid system

Hybrid system precautions

Take care when handling the hybrid system, as it contains a high voltage system (about 650 V at maximum) as well as parts that become extremely hot when the hybrid system is operating. Obey the caution labels attached to the vehicle.



(1) Air conditioning compressor

- (2) Power control unit with DC/DC converter
- (6) Electric motor (traction motor)
- (7) Caution label
- (3) High voltage cables (orange)
- (4) Hybrid battery (traction battery)

73

74 1-2. Hybrid system

Hybrid battery (traction battery) air vent

There is an air intake vent on the left side of the rear seatback for the purpose of cooling the hybrid battery (traction battery). If the vent becomes blocked, the hybrid battery may overheat, leading to a reduction in hybrid battery output.



Emergency shut off system

When a certain level of impact is detected by the impact sensor, the emergency shut off system blocks off the high voltage current and stops the fuel pump to minimize the risk of electrocution and fuel leakage. If the emergency shut off system activates, your vehicle will not restart. To restart the hybrid system, contact your Toyota dealer.

Hybrid warning message

A message is automatically displayed when a malfunction occurs in the hybrid system or an improper operation is attempted.

If a warning message is shown on the multi-information display, read the message and follow the instructions. (\rightarrow P. 414)



If a warning light comes on, a warning message is displayed, or the 12volt battery is disconnected

The hybrid system may not start. In that case, try to start the system again. If the "READY" indicator does not come on, contact your Toyota dealer.

Running out of fuel

When the vehicle has run out of fuel and the hybrid system cannot be started, refuel the vehicle with at least enough gasoline to make the low fuel level warning light (\rightarrow P. 407) go off. If there is only a small amount of fuel, the hybrid system may not be able to start. (The minimum amount of fuel to add to make the low fuel level warning light go out is about 3.0 gal. [11.3 L, 2.5 Imp. gal.], when the vehicle is on a level surface. This value may vary when the vehicle is on a slope.)

Electromagnetic waves

- High voltage parts and cables on the hybrid vehicles incorporate electromagnetic shielding, and therefore emit approximately the same amount of electromagnetic waves as conventional gasoline powered vehicles or home electronic appliances.
- Your vehicle may cause sound interference in some third party-produced radio parts.

Hybrid battery (traction battery)

The hybrid battery (traction battery) has a limited service life. The lifespan of the hybrid battery (traction battery) can change in accordance with driving style and driving conditions.

76 1-2. Hybrid system

High voltage precautions

The vehicle has high voltage DC and AC systems as well as a 12-volt system. DC and AC high voltage is very dangerous and can cause severe burns and electric shock that may result in death or serious injury.

- Never touch, disassemble, remove or replace the high voltage parts, cables or their connectors.
- The hybrid system will become hot after starting as the system uses high voltage. Be careful of both the high voltage and the high temperature, and always obey the caution labels attached to the vehicle.
- Never try to open the service plug access hole located behind the rear seats. The service plug is used only when the vehicle is serviced and is subject to high voltage.



Road accident cautions

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of death or serious injury:

- Pull your vehicle off the road, apply the parking brake, shift the shift lever to P, and turn the hybrid system off.
- Do not touch the high voltage parts, cables and connectors.
- If electric wires are exposed inside or outside your vehicle, an electric shock may occur. Never touch exposed electric wires.
- If a fluid leak occurs, do not touch the fluid as it may be strong alkaline electrolyte from the hybrid battery (traction battery). If it comes into contact with your skin or eyes, wash it off immediately with a large amount of water or, if possible, boric acid solution. Seek immediate medical attention.
- If a fire occurs in the hybrid vehicle, leave the vehicle as soon as possible. Never use a fire extinguisher that is not meant for electric fires. Using even a small amount of water may be dangerous.
- If your vehicle needs to be towed, do so with front wheels raised. If the wheels connected to the electric motor (traction motor) are on the ground when towing, the motor may continue to generate electricity. This may cause an electricity leakage leading to a fire. (→P. 400)

1-2. Hybrid system

 Carefully inspect the ground under the vehicle. If you find that liquid has leaked onto the ground, the fuel system may have been damaged. Leave the vehicle as soon as possible.

Hybrid battery (traction battery)

Your vehicle contains a sealed nickel-metal hydride battery. Never resell, hand over or modify the hybrid battery. To prevent accidents, hybrid batteries that have been removed from a disposed vehicle are collected through Toyota dealer. Do not dispose of the battery yourself.

Unless the battery is properly collected, the following may occur, resulting in death or serious injury:

- The hybrid battery may be illegally disposed of or dumped, and it is hazardous to the environment or someone may touch a high voltage part, resulting in an electric shock.
- The hybrid battery is intended to be used exclusively with your hybrid vehicle. If the hybrid battery is used outside of your vehicle or modified in any way, accidents such as electric shock, heat generation, smoke generation, an explosion and electrolyte leakage may occur.

When reselling or handing over your vehicle, the possibility of an accident is extremely high because the person receiving the vehicle may not be aware of these dangers.

If your vehicle is disposed of without the hybrid battery having been removed, there is a danger of serious electric shock if high voltage parts, cables and their connectors are touched. In the event that your vehicle must be disposed of, the hybrid battery must be disposed of by your Toyota dealer or a qualified service shop. If the hybrid battery is not disposed of properly, it may cause electric shock that can result in death or serious injury.

77

78 1-2. Hybrid system

Hybrid battery air vent

- Do not put foreign objects near the air vent. The hybrid battery (traction battery) may overheat and be damaged.
- Clean the air vent regularly to prevent the hybrid battery (traction battery) from overheating.
- Do not wet or allow foreign substances to enter the air vent as this may cause a short circuit and damage the hybrid battery (traction battery).
- Do not carry large amounts of water such as water cooler bottles in the vehicle. If water spills onto the hybrid battery (traction battery), the battery may be damaged. Have the vehicle inspected by your Toyota dealer.

Immobilizer system

The vehicle's keys have built-in transponder chips that prevent the hybrid system from starting if a key has not been previously registered in the vehicle's on-board computer.

Never leave the keys inside the vehicle when you leave the vehicle.

This system is designed to help prevent vehicle theft but does not guarantee absolute security against all vehicle thefts.

The indicator light flashes after the power switch has been turned off to indicate that the system is operating.

The indicator light stops flashing after the power switch has been turned to ACCESSORY or ON mode to indicate that the system has been canceled.



System maintenance

The vehicle has a maintenance-free type immobilizer system.

Conditions that may cause the system to malfunction

- If the grip portion of the key is in contact with a metallic object
- If the key is in close proximity to or touching a key to the security system (key with a built-in transponder chip) of another vehicle

80 1-3. Theft deterrent system

Certifications for the immobilizer system

FCC ID: NI4TMIMB-3

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

A CAUTION

Certifications for the immobilizer system

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

To ensure the system operates correctly

Do not modify or remove the system. If modified or removed, the proper operation of the system cannot be guaranteed.

Alarm

The alarm

The alarm uses light and sound to give an alert when an intrusion is detected.

The alarm is triggered in the following situations when the alarm is set:

- A locked door or trunk is unlocked or opened in any way other than using the entry function, wireless remote control or mechanical key.
- The hood is opened.
- Some models: The window is tapped or broken.

Setting the alarm system

Close the doors, trunk and hood, and lock all the doors. The system will be set automatically after 30 seconds.

The indicator light changes from being on to flashing when the system is set.



Deactivating or stopping the alarm

Do one of the following to deactivate or stop the alarms:

- Unlock the doors or open the trunk.
- Turn the power switch to ACCESSORY or ON mode, or start the hybrid system. (The alarm will be deactivated or stopped after a few seconds.)

81

For safety and security

System maintenance

The vehicle has a maintenance-free type alarm system.

Items to check before locking the vehicle

To prevent unexpected triggering of the alarm and vehicle theft, make sure of the following:

- Nobody is in the vehicle.
- The windows and moon roof are closed before the alarm is set.
- No valuables or other personal items are left in the vehicle.

Triggering of the alarm

The alarm may be triggered in the following situations: (Stopping the alarm deactivates the alarm system.)

• A person inside the vehicle opens a door, the trunk or hood.



• The 12-volt battery is recharged or replaced when the vehicle is locked.



Alarm-operated door lock

- When the alarm is operating, the doors are locked automatically to prevent intruders.
- Do not leave the key inside the vehicle when the alarm is operating, and make sure the key is not inside the vehicle when recharging or replacing the battery.

To ensure the system operates correctly

Do not modify or remove the system. If modified or removed, the proper operation of the system cannot be guaranteed.

1-3. Theft deterrent system

Theft prevention labels

These labels are attached to the vehicle to reduce vehicle theft by facilitating the tracing and recovery of parts from stolen vehicles. Do not remove under penalty of law.



83

AVALON_HV_U (OM41457U)

Instrument cluster

2

2. Instrument cluster

Warning lights and	
indicators	86
Gauges and meters	91
Multi-information display	96
Energy monitor/	
consumption screen 1	02

85

Warning lights and indicators

The warning lights and indicators on the instrument cluster and center panel inform the driver of the status of the vehicle's various systems.

For the purpose of explanation, the following illustration displays all warning lights and indicators illuminated.



Instrument cluster

Center panel



Warning lights

Warning lights inform the driver of malfunctions in the indicated vehicle's systems.

*1 BRAKE	Brake system warning light (→P. 404)	*1	Slip indicator (\rightarrow P. 406)	
*1	Charging system warning light (\rightarrow P. 405)	*1	Brake system warning light (→P. 406)	2
*1	Malfunction indicator lamp (→P. 405)		Open door warning light (→P. 406)	Instrum
*1	SRS warning light (→P. 405)		Low fuel level warning light (→P. 407)	Instrument cluster
*1 ABS	ABS warning light (→P. 405)	Ä	Seat belt reminder light (→P. 407)	
*1	Electric power steering system warning light (→P. 405)	*1	Master warning light (→P. 407)	
*1	Low engine oil pressure warning light (\rightarrow P. 405)	*1	Tire pressure warning light (→P. 407)	
*1, 2 PCS (if equipped)	"PCS" warning light (→P. 406)	*2 ECO (if equipped)	Automatic high beam indicator (→P. 195)	

88 2. Instrument cluster

- *1: These lights turn on when the power switch is turned to ON mode to indicate that a system check is being performed. They will turn off after the hybrid system is started, or after a few seconds. There may be a malfunction in a system if the lights do not come on, or do not turn off. Have the vehicle inspected by your Toyota dealer.
- *2 : The light flashes to indicate a malfunction.

Indicators

The indicators inform the driver of the operating state of the vehicle's various systems.



(if equipped)

90 2. Instrument cluster

- *1: These lights turn on when the power switch is turned to ON mode to indicate that a system check is being performed. They will turn off after the hybrid system is started, or after a few seconds. There may be a malfunction in a system if the lights do not come on, or do not turn off. Have the vehicle inspected by your Toyota dealer.
- *2: The light flashes to indicate that the system is operating.
- *3: The light comes on when the system is turned off. The light flashes faster than usual to indicate that the system is operating.

CAUTION

If a safety system warning light does not come on

Should a safety system light such as the ABS and SRS warning light not come on when you start the hybrid system, this could mean that these systems are not available to help protect you in an accident, which could result in death or serious injury. Have the vehicle inspected by your Toyota dealer immediately if this occurs.

Gauges and meters



(1) Hybrid System Indicator

Displays hybrid system output or regeneration level (\rightarrow P. 94)

- (2) Multi-information display Presents the driver with a variety of driving-related data (\rightarrow P. 96)
- (3) Speedometer Displays the vehicle speed
- (4) Fuel gauge

Displays the quantity of fuel remaining in the tank

(5) Trip meter reset knob/instrument panel light control knob →P. 93

91

(6) Odometer and trip meter display

Odometer:

Displays the total distance the vehicle has been driven

Trip meter:

Displays the distance the vehicle has been driven since the meter was last reset. Trip meters "A" and "B" can be used to record and display different distances independently.

(7) Shift position and shift range

Displays the selected shift position or selected shift range (\rightarrow P. 185)

(8) Engine coolant temperature gauge

Displays the engine coolant temperature

Changing the trip meter display

Switches between trip meter "A" and "B" displays. When the trip meter is displayed, pressing and holding the knob will reset the trip meter.



Instrument panel light control

The brightness of the instrument panel lights can be adjusted.

- 1 Darker
- (2) Brighter



Instrument cluster

93

The meters and display illuminate when

The power switch is in ON mode.

The brightness of the instrument panel lights

- When the headlight switch is turned to on, the brightness will be reduced slightly unless the control knob is turned fully clockwise.
- When the knob is turned fully clockwise, the display audio/navigation system screen will always be in day mode regardless of the headlight switch position.

Hybrid System Indicator

1 Charge area

Shows regenerative charging.

Hybrid Eco area

Shows that gasoline engine power is not being used very often.

The gasoline engine will automatically stop and restart under various conditions.

③ Eco area

Shows that the vehicle is being driven in an Eco-friendly manner.

④ Power area

Shows that an Eco-friendly driving range is being exceeded (during full power driving etc.)

- Hybrid System Indicator is displayed when the driving mode is other than the sport mode.
- By keeping the indicator needle within Eco area, more Eco-friendly driving can be achieved.
- Charge area indicates regeneration^{*} status. Regenerated energy will be used to charge the battery.
- *: When used in this manual, "regeneration" refers to the conversion of energy created by the movement of the vehicle into electrical energy.

Engine speed

On hybrid vehicles, engine speed is precisely controlled in order to help improve fuel efficiency and reduce exhaust emissions etc.

There are times when the engine speed that is displayed may differ even when vehicle operation and driving conditions are the same.



Customization

The instrument panel light auto dimmer control can be changed. (Customizable feature: \rightarrow P. 469)

To prevent damage to the engine and its components

- When indicating the tachometer (Using the S mode driving): Do not let the indicator of the tachometer enter the red zone, which indicates the maximum engine speed. (→P. 186)
- The engine may be overheating if the engine coolant temperature gauge is in the red zone (H). In this case, immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place, and check the engine after it has cooled completely. (→P. 436)

Instrument cluster

Multi-information display

Display contents

The multi-information display presents the driver with a variety of driving-related data.

- Distance to empty (\rightarrow P. 97)
- Average fuel economy (→P. 97)
- Current fuel economy (→P. 98)
- Energy Flow (\rightarrow P. 102)
- Digital speedometer (\rightarrow P. 98)
- Turn-by-turn navigation (vehicles with a navigation system)
 (→P. 98)
- Settings (\rightarrow P. 99)
- Warning messages and reminder messages (→P. 414)

Automatically displayed when a malfunction occurs in one of the vehicle's systems or when a reminder message is required. The display returns to the previous screen by pressing the "DISP" button. (\rightarrow P. 97)

- Cruise control display (if equipped) (→P. 211)
- Dynamic radar cruise control display (if equipped) (→P. 215)
- Tachometer (→P. 186)



Trip information

Switching the display

Items displayed be can switched by pressing the "DISP" button.



Distance to Empty

125

Distance to empty

Displays the estimated maximum distance that can be driven with the quantity of fuel remaining.

- This distance is computed based on your average fuel consumption. As a result, the actual distance that can be driven may differ from that displayed.
- When only a small amount of fuel is added to the tank, the display may not be updated. When refueling, turn the power switch off. If the vehicle is refueled without turning the power switch off, the display may not be updated.

Average fuel economy

Displays the average fuel consumption since the function was reset.

- The function can be reset by pressing and holding the "DISP" button when the average fuel consumption is displayed.
- Use the displayed average fuel consumption as a reference.



Instrument cluster

2

97



CTY20AX037

98 2. Instrument cluster

Current fuel economy

Displays the current rate of fuel consumption.



Digital speedometer

Displays the current vehicle speed.

This screen can be disabled in the "Settings" screen. (\rightarrow P. 99)



■ Turn-by-turn navigation (vehicles with a navigation system)

Displays information from the navigation system about the next turn on the guidance route.



AVALON_HV_U (OM41457U)

Setting up the displays

Customizable items

Item	Default setting	Customized setting
Digital speedometer	On	Off
Units (vehicles without a navigation system)	English	Metric
Turn-by-turn navigation (vehicles with a navigation system)	On	Off
EV indicator	On	Off

Changing the settings

1 While the vehicle is stopped, press the "DISP" button until the "Settings" screen appears.



2 Press and hold the "DISP" button while the "Settings" screen is displayed.



- 3 Press the "DISP" button to select the desired setting item.



99

Instrument cluster

100 2. Instrument cluster



System check display

After turning the power switch to ON mode, "SYSTEM CHECK" is displayed while system operation is checked.

Trip summary display

When the hybrid system is turned off, drive information data since the hybrid system was started is displayed for 3 seconds.



Setting display automatic cancelation

In the following situations, setting display in which the settings can be changed through the "DISP" button will automatically be turned off.

- When a warning message appears while the setting display is displayed
- When the vehicle begins to move while the setting display is displayed

Liquid crystal display

Small spots or light spots may appear on the display. This phenomenon is characteristic of liquid crystal displays, and there is no problem continuing to use the display.

The information display at low temperatures

Allow the interior of the vehicle to warm up before using the liquid crystal information display. At extremely low temperatures, the information display monitor may respond slowly, and display changes may be delayed.

For example, there is a lag between the driver's shifting and the new gear number appearing on the display. This lag could cause the driver to downshift again, causing rapid and excessive engine braking and possibly an accident resulting in death or injury.

Cautions during setting up the display

As the hybrid system needs to be operating during setting up the display, ensure that the vehicle is parked in a place with adequate ventilation. In a closed area such as a garage, exhaust gases including harmful carbon monoxide (CO) may collect and enter the vehicle. This may lead to death or a serious health hazard.

2

During setting up the display

To prevent 12-volt battery discharge, ensure that the hybrid system is operating while setting up the display features.

102 2. Instrument cluster

Energy monitor/consumption screen

You can view the status of your hybrid system on the multi-information display and the audio system.

- 1 Audio system
- (2) Multi-information display



Energy monitor

- Audio system
- 1 Press "APPS".



2 Select "Eco".

If the "Trip Information" or "Past Record" screen is displayed, touch "Energy".

103

Multi-information display Press the "DISP" button on the steering wheel several times to select the energy monitor display. // CTY20AX031 Multi-information Audio system display Instrument cluster When the vehicle is powered by the electric motor (traction motor) When the vehicle is powered by the gasoline engine When the vehicle is powered by both the gasoline engine and the electric (traction motor motor) When the vehicle is charging the hybrid battery (traction battery)

104 2. Instrument cluster

	Audio system	Multi-information display
When there is no energy flow	Energy Monitor	
Hybrid battery (trac- tion battery) status	Low Full	Low Full

105

Trip Information

Audio system

- 1 Press "APPS". (→P. 102)
- 2 Select "Eco".

If "Energy Monitor" screen is displayed, touch "Fuel Consumption".

If "Past Record" screen is displayed, touch "Trip Information".

- Fuel consumption in the past 15 minutes
- (2) Displays the average vehicle speed since the hybrid system was started.
- ③ Displays the elapsed time since the hybrid system was started.
- (4) Cruising range
- (5) Regenerated energy in the past 15 minutes

One symbol indicates 50 Wh.

Up to 5 symbols are shown.

The image is example only, and may vary slightly from actual conditions.



Past record screen

Audio system

- 1 Press "APPS". (→P. 102)
- 2 Select "Eco".

If "Energy Monitor" screen is displayed, touch "Fuel Consumption".

If "Trip Information" screen is displayed, touch "Past Record".

- (1) Best past fuel consumption
- (2) Update

record

The average fuel consumption and graph are updated, and a new average fuel consumption record begins.

(3) Average fuel consumption

Displays a maximum of five past record of the average fuel consumption.

sumption.

Previous fuel consumption



The image is example only, and may vary slightly from actual conditions.

Resetting the consumption data

Selecting "Clear" on the "Trip Information" screen will reset the fuel consumption and the regenerated energy for the past 15 minutes. Selecting "Clear" on the "Past Record" screen will reset the past records and best past fuel consumption. Selecting "Yes" on the following screen will confirm resetting of all the data.

Customization

The touch button sensitivity can be changed. (Customizable features \rightarrow P. 469)

Operation of each component

3-1. Key information Keys..... 108 3-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk Smart key system 111 Wireless remote control 126 Doors 129 Trunk...... 132 3-3. Adjusting the seats Front seats 136 Driving position memory...... 138 Head restraints..... 143 3-4. Adjusting the steering wheel and mirrors Steering wheel 146 Inside rear view mirror 147 Outside rear view mirrors...... 149 3-5. Opening, closing the windows and moon roof Power windows 152

Moon roof	155

107

108 3-1. Key information

Keys

The keys

The following keys are provided with the vehicle.

- 1 Electronic keys
 - Operating the smart key system (→P. 111)
 - Operating the wireless remote control function (→P. 126)
- Mechanical keys
- 3 Key number plate

Using the mechanical key

To take out the mechanical key, push the release button and take the key out.

The mechanical key can only be inserted in one direction, as the key only has grooves on one side. If the key cannot be inserted in a lock cylinder, turn it over and reattempt to insert it.

After using the mechanical key, store it in the electronic key. Carry the mechanical key together with the electronic key. If the electronic key battery is depleted or the entry function does not operate properly, you will need the mechanical key. $(\rightarrow P. 430)$




When required to leave the vehicle's key with a parking attendant

Turn the trunk opener main switch off and lock the glove box as circumstances demand. (\rightarrow P. 133, 278)

Remove the mechanical key for your own use and provide the attendant with the electronic key only.

If you lose your mechanical keys

New genuine mechanical keys can be made by your Toyota dealer using the other mechanical key and the key number stamped on your key number plate. Keep the plate in a safe place such as your wallet, not in the vehicle.

When riding in an aircraft

When bringing an electronic key onto an aircraft, make sure you do not press any buttons on the electronic key while inside the aircraft cabin. If you are carrying an electronic key in your bag etc., ensure that the buttons are not likely to be pressed accidentally. Pressing a button may cause the electronic key to emit radio waves that could interfere with the operation of the aircraft.

To prevent key damage

- Do not drop the keys, subject them to strong shocks or bend them.
- Do not expose the keys to high temperatures for long periods of time.
- Do not get the keys wet or wash them in an ultrasonic washer etc.
- Do not attach metallic or magnetic materials to the keys or place the keys close to such materials.
- Do not disassemble the keys.
- Do not attach a sticker or anything else to the surface of the electronic key.
- Do not place the keys near objects that produce magnetic fields, such as TVs, audio systems and induction cookers, or medical electrical equipment, such as low-frequency therapy equipment.

Carrying the electronic key on your person

Carry the electronic key 3.9 in. (10 cm) or more away from electric appliances that are turned on. Radio waves emitted from electric appliances within 3.9 in. (10 cm) of the electronic key may interfere with the key, causing the key to not function properly.

In case of a smart key system malfunction or other key-related problems

Take your vehicle with all the electronic keys provided with your vehicle to your Toyota dealer.

When an electronic key is lost

If the electronic key remains lost, the risk of vehicle theft increases significantly. Visit your Toyota dealer immediately with all remaining electronic keys that was provided with your vehicle.

Smart key system

Function summary

The following operations can be performed simply by carrying the electronic key on your person, for example in your pocket. (The driver should always carry the electronic key.)



- (2) Unlocks the trunk (\rightarrow P. 112)
- (3) Starts the hybrid system (\rightarrow P. 177)

Operation signals

A buzzer sounds and the emergency flashers flash to indicate that the doors have been locked/unlocked. (Locked: once; Unlocked: twice)

Security feature

If a door is not opened within approximately 60 seconds after the vehicle is unlocked, the security feature automatically locks the vehicle again.

111

Unlocking and locking the doors

Grip the driver's door handle to unlock the door. Some models, grip the passenger's door handle to unlock all the doors.*

Make sure to touch the sensor on the back of the handle.

The doors cannot be unlocked for 3 seconds after the doors are locked.

*: The door unlock settings can be changed. (→P. 118)

Touch the lock sensor (the indentation on the upper part of the door handle) to lock all the doors.

Check that the door is securely locked.





Unlocking the trunk

Press the button to unlock the trunk.



Antenna location and effective range

Antenna location

- (1) Right side antenna outside the cabin (if equipped)
- (2) Antennas inside the cabin
- (3) Antenna outside the trunk
- (4) Antenna inside the trunk
- (5) Left side antenna outside the cabin



Operation of each component

114 3-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk

Effective range (areas within which the electronic key is detected)



When locking or unlocking the doors

The system can be operated when the electronic key is within about 2.3 ft. (0.7 m) of an outside door handle. (Only the doors detecting the key can be operated.)

When unlocking the trunk

The system can be operated when the electronic key is within about 2.3 ft. (0.7 m) of the trunk release button.

When starting the hybrid system or changing power switch modes

The system can be operated when the electronic key is inside the vehicle.

When the door cannot be locked by the lock sensor on the upper part of the door handle

If the door will not lock even when the topside sensor area is touched, try touching both the topside and underside sensor areas at the same time.



Alarms and warning indicators

An alarm sounds and warning message displays shown on the multi-information display are used to protect against unexpected accidents or theft of the vehicle resulting from erroneous operation. When a warning message is displayed, take appropriate measures based on the displayed message. $(\rightarrow P. 414)$

When only an alarm sounds, circumstances and correction procedures are as follows.

Alarm	Situation	Correction procedure
Exterior alarm sounds once for 5 seconds	An attempt was made to lock the doors using the smart key system while the electronic key was still inside the vehi- cle.	Retrieve the electronic key from the passenger compartment and lock the doors again.
	The trunk was closed while the electronic key was still inside the trunk and all the doors were locked.	Retrieve the electronic key from the trunk and close the trunk lid.
	An attempt was made to lock the vehicle while a door was open.	Close all of the doors and lock the doors again.
Interior alarm pings once and exterior alarm sounds once for 5 sec- onds	An attempt was made to lock either front door by opening a door and putting the inside lock button into the lock position, then closing the door with the elec- tronic key still inside the vehicle.	Retrieve the electronic key from the vehicle and lock the doors again.

116 3-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk

Alarm	Situation	Correction procedure
Interior alarm sounds continuously	The power switch was turned to ACCESSORY mode while the driver's door was open (The driver's door was opened when the power switch was in ACCESSORY mode.)	Turn the power switch off and close the driver's door.
	The driver's door was opened while any shift position other than P was selected without turning off the power switch.	Shift the shift lever to P.

The following table describes circumstances and correction procedures when alarms are sounded and a message or key icon is displayed.

Interior buzzer	Exterior buzzer	Situation	Correction procedure
Continuous	Continuous	The electronic key was carried outside the vehicle and the driver's door was opened and closed while any shift position other than P was selected with- out turning off the power switch.	 Change the shift position to P. Bring the electronic key back into the vehicle.
Once	3 times	The electronic key was carried outside the vehicle and the driver's door was opened and closed while the shift position P was selected without turning off the power switch.	Turn the power switch off or bring the elec- tronic key back into the vehi- cle.
Once	3 times	Indicates that a door other than the driver's door has been opened and closed with the power switch in any mode other than off and the electronic key outside of the detection area.	Confirm the location of the electronic key.

3-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk

Interior buzzer	Exterior buzzer	Situation	Correction procedure
Once	Continuous (5 seconds)	An attempt was made to exit the vehicle with the electronic key and lock the doors without first turning the power switch off.	Turn the power switch off and lock the doors again.
Once	_	Indicates that the electronic key is not present when attempting to start the hybrid system.	Confirm the location of the electronic key.
9 times		An attempt was made to drive when the regular key was not inside the vehicle.	Confirm that the electronic key is inside the vehicle.
Once	_	Indicates that the electronic key battery is low.	Replace the battery. (→P. 369)
Once		Indicates that the steering lock has not been released.	Releasethesteering lock. $(\rightarrow P. 180)$
Once		 When the doors were unlocked with the mechanical key and then the power switch was pressed, the electronic key could not be detected in the vehicle. The electronic key could not be detected in the vehicle even after the power switch was pressed two consecutive times. 	Touch the electronic key to the power switch while depressing the brake pedal.

117

Operation of each component

Switching the door unlock function (some models)

It is possible to set which doors the entry function unlocks using the wireless remote control.

1 Turn the power switch off.

2 When the indicator light on the key surface is not on, press and hold 2 ,

or (() for approximately 5 seconds while pressing and holding

The setting changes each time an operation is performed, as shown below. (When changing the setting continuously, release the buttons, wait for at least 5 seconds, and repeat step $\boxed{2}$.)

Multi-information display	Unlocking function	Веер
	Holding the driver's door handle unlocks only the driver's door.	Exterior: Beeps 3 times
	Holding a passenger's door handle unlocks all the doors.	Interior: Pings once
	Holding either front door handle unlocks all the doors.	Exterior: Beeps twice Interior: Pings once

To prevent unintended triggering of the alarm, unlock the doors using the wireless remote control and open and close a door once after the settings have been changed. (If a door is not opened within 60 seconds after $\widehat{}$ is pressed, the doors will be locked again and the alarm will automatically be set.)

In case that the alarm is triggered, immediately stop the alarm. (\rightarrow P. 81)

Battery-saving function

The battery-saving function will be activated in order to prevent the electronic key battery and the 12-volt battery from being discharged while the vehicle is not in operation for a long time.

- In the following situations, the smart key system may take some time to unlock the doors.
 - The electronic key has been left in an area of approximately 6 ft. (2 m) of the outside of the vehicle for 10 minutes or longer.
 - The smart key system has not been used for 5 days or longer.
- If the smart key system has not been used for 14 days or longer, the doors cannot be unlocked at any doors except the driver's door. In this case, take hold of the driver's door handle, or use the wireless remote control or the mechanical key, to unlock the doors.

Electronic Key battery-Saving Function

When battery-saving mode is set, battery depletion is minimized by stopping the electronic key from receiving radio waves.

Press a twice while pressing and

holding **A** . Confirm that the electronic key indicator flashes 4 times.

While the battery-saving mode is set, the smart key system cannot be used. To cancel the function, press any of the electronic key buttons.



Operation of each component

Conditions affecting operation

The smart key system uses weak radio waves. In the following situations, the communication between the electronic key and the vehicle may be affected, preventing the smart key system, wireless remote control and immobilizer system from operating properly. (Ways of coping: \rightarrow P. 430)

• When the electronic key battery is depleted

- Near a TV tower, electric power plant, gas station, radio station, large display, airport or other facility that generates strong radio waves or electrical noise
- When carrying a portable radio, cellular phone, cordless phone or other wireless communication device
- When the electronic key is in contact with, or is covered by the following metallic objects
 - · Cards to which aluminum foil is attached
 - · Cigarette boxes that have aluminum foil inside
 - · Metallic wallets or bags
 - Coins
 - · Hand warmers made of metal
 - Media such as CDs and DVDs
- When other wireless keys (that emit radio waves) are being used nearby
- When carrying the electronic key together with the following devices that emit radio waves
 - · Another vehicle's electronic key or a wireless key that emits radio waves
 - · Personal computers or personal digital assistants (PDAs)
 - Digital audio players
- Portable game systems
- If window tint with a metallic content or metallic objects are attached to the rear window

Note for the entry function

- Even when the electronic key is within the effective range (detection areas), the system may not operate properly in the following cases:
 - The electronic key is too close to the window or outside door handle, near the ground, or in a high place when the doors are locked or unlocked.
 - The electronic key is near the ground or in a high place, or too close to the rear bumper center when the trunk is opened.
 - The electronic key is on the instrument panel, rear package tray or floor, or in the door pockets or glove box when the hybrid system is started or power switch modes are changed.
- Do not leave the electronic key on top of the instrument panel or near the door pockets when exiting the vehicle. Depending on the radio wave reception conditions, it may be detected by the antenna outside the cabin and the door will become lockable from the outside, possibly trapping the electronic key inside the vehicle.
- As long as the electronic key is within the effective range, the doors may be locked or unlocked by anyone. However, only the doors detecting the electronic key can be used to unlock the vehicle.
- Even if the electronic key is not inside the vehicle, it may be possible to start the hybrid system if the electronic key is near the window.
- The doors may unlock or lock if a large amount of water splashes on the door handle, such as in the rain or in a car wash when the electronic key is within the effective range. (The doors will automatically be locked after approximately 60 seconds if the doors are not opened and closed.)
- If the wireless remote control is used to lock the doors when the electronic key is near the vehicle, there is a possibility that the door may not be unlocked by the entry function. (Use the wireless remote control to unlock the doors.)

Note for locking the doors

- Touching the door lock sensor while wearing gloves may delay or prevent lock operation. Remove the gloves and touch the lock sensor again.
- If the door handle becomes wet while the electronic key is within the effective range, the door may lock and unlock repeatedly. In that case, follow the following correction procedures to wash the vehicle:
 - Place the electronic key in a location 6 ft. (2 m) or more away from the vehicle. (Take care to ensure that the key is not stolen.)
 - Set the electronic key to battery-saving mode to disable the smart key system. (→P. 119)
- If the electronic key is inside the vehicle and a door handle becomes wet during a car wash, a message may be shown on the multi-information display and a buzzer will sound outside the vehicle. To turn off the alarm, lock all the doors.
- The lock sensor may not work properly if it comes into contact with ice, snow, mud, etc. Clean the lock sensor and attempt to operate it again, or use the lock sensor on the lower part of the door handle.
- Fingernails may scrape against the door during operation of the door handle. Be careful not to injure fingernails or damage the surface of the door.

Note for the unlocking function

- A sudden approach to the effective range or door handle may prevent the doors from being unlocked. In this case, return the door handle to the original position and check that the doors unlock before pulling the door handle again.
- Gripping the door handle when wearing a glove may not unlock the door.
- If the door handle becomes wet while the electronic key is within the effective range, the door may lock and unlock repeatedly. In that case, follow the following correction procedures to wash the vehicle:
 - Place the electronic key in a location 6 ft. (2 m) or more away from the vehicle. (Take care to ensure that the key is not stolen.)
 - Set the electronic key to battery-saving mode to disable the smart key system. (→P. 119)
- If there is another electronic key in the detection area, it may take slightly longer to unlock the doors after the door handle is gripped.
- Fingernails may scrape against the door during operation of the door handle. Be careful not to injure fingernails or damage the surface of the door.

When the vehicle is not driven for extended periods

- To prevent theft of the vehicle, do not leave the electronic key within 6 ft. (2 m) of the vehicle.
- The smart key system can be deactivated in advance. (\rightarrow P. 469)

Alarm

Using the smart key system to lock the doors will set the alarm system. (\rightarrow P. 81)

To operate the system properly

 Make sure to carry the electronic key when operating the system. Do not get the electronic key too close to the vehicle when operating the system from the outside of the vehicle.

Depending on the position and holding condition of the electronic key, the key may not be detected correctly and the system may not operate properly. (The alarm may go off accidentally, or the door lock prevention function may not operate.)

• Do not leave the electronic key inside the luggage compartment.

The key confinement prevention function may not operate, depending on the location of the key (close to a spare tire, the inside edge of the luggage compartment), conditions (inside a metal bag, close to metallic objects) and the radio waves in the surrounding area. (\rightarrow P. 133)

If the smart key system does not operate properly

• Locking and unlocking the doors: Use the mechanical key. (\rightarrow P. 430)

- Unlocking the trunk: \rightarrow P. 134
- Starting the hybrid system: \rightarrow P. 431

Electronic key battery depletion

- The standard battery life is 1 to 2 years.
- If the battery becomes low, an alarm will sound in the cabin when the hybrid system stops. (→P. 115)
- As the electronic key always receives radio waves, the battery will become depleted even if the electronic key is not used. The following symptoms indicate that the electronic key battery may be depleted. Replace the battery when necessary. (→P. 369)
 - The smart key system or the wireless remote control does not operate.
 - The detection area becomes smaller.
 - The LED indicator on the key surface does not turn on.
- To avoid serious deterioration, do not leave the electronic key within 3 ft. (1 m) of the following electrical appliances that produce a magnetic field:
 - TVs
 - Personal computers
 - · Cellular phones, cordless phones and battery chargers
 - · Recharging cellular phones or cordless phones
 - Table lamps
 - Induction cookers

When the electronic key battery is fully depleted

→P. 369

Customization

Settings (e. g. operation signal) can be changed. (Customizable features: \rightarrow P. 469)

If the smart key system has been deactivated in a customized setting

- Locking and unlocking the doors: \rightarrow P. 126, 430
- Unlocking the trunk: \rightarrow P. 134
- Starting the hybrid system and changing power switch modes: \rightarrow P. 431
- Stopping the hybrid system: \rightarrow P. 178

FCC ID: NI4TMLF10-18

NOTE:

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC WARNING:

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

A CAUTION

Caution regarding interference with electronic devices

 People with implantable cardiac pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy-pacemakers or implantable cardioverter defibrillators should keep away from the smart key system antennas. (→P. 113)

The radio waves may affect the operation of such devices. If necessary, the entry function can be disabled. Ask your Toyota dealer for details, such as the frequency of radio waves and timing of the emitted radio waves. Then, consult your doctor to see if you should disable the entry function.

Users of any electrical medical device other than implantable cardiac pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy-pacemakers or implantable cardioverter defibrillators should consult the manufacturer of the device for information about its operation under the influence of radio waves.

Radio waves could have unexpected effects on the operation of such medical devices.

Ask your Toyota dealer for details on disabling the entry function.

126 3-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk

Wireless remote control

Function summary

The wireless remote control can be used to lock and unlock the vehicle.

(1) Locks all the doors

Check that the door is securely locked.

(2) Unlocks all the doors

Pressing the button unlocks the driver's door. Pressing the button again within 5 seconds unlocks the other doors.

- ③ Unlocks the trunk (press and hold)
- ④ Sounds the alarm (press and hold) (→P. 127)



Operation signals

Doors:

A buzzer sounds and the emergency flashers flash to indicate that the doors have been locked/unlocked. (Locked: once; Unlocked: twice)

Trunk:

A buzzer sounds to indicate that the trunk has been opened.

Door lock buzzer

If an attempt to lock the doors is made when a door is not fully closed, a buzzer sounds continuously for 5 seconds. Fully close the door to stop the buzzer, and lock the vehicle once more.

Panic mode

When ((1) is pressed for longer than about one second, an alarm will sound intermittently and the vehicle lights will flash to deter any person from trying to break into or damage your vehicle.

To stop the alarm, press any button on the electronic key.

Security feature

→P. 111

Alarm

Using the wireless remote control to lock the doors will set the alarm system. (\rightarrow P. 81)

Conditions affecting operation

→P. 120



5

- If the wireless remote control does not operate properly
 - Locking and unlocking the doors: Use the mechanical key. (→P. 430)
 Unlocking the trunk: →P. 134
- Electronic key battery depletion

→P. 124

When the electronic key battery is fully depleted

→P. 369

Confirmation of the registered key number

The number of keys already registered to the vehicle can be confirmed. Ask your Toyota dealer for details.

Customization

Settings (e.g. wireless remote control system) can be changed. (Customizable features: \rightarrow P. 469)

Certification for wireless remote control

FCC ID: HYQ23AAB FCC ID: HYQ14FBA NOTE:

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC WARNING:

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Doors

Unlocking and locking the doors

The vehicle can be locked and unlocked using the entry function, wireless remote control or door lock switches.

Entry function

→P. 111

Wireless remote control

→P. 126

Door lock switches

- 1 Locks all the doors
- (2) Unlocks all the doors



Inside lock buttons

- 1 Unlocks the door
- 2 Locks the door

The front doors can be opened by pulling the inside handle even if the lock buttons are in the lock position.



129

Locking the front doors from the outside without a key

1 Move the inside lock button to the lock position.

2 Close the door.

The door cannot be locked if the power switch is in ACCESSORY or ON mode, or the electronic key is left inside the vehicle.

The key may not be detected correctly and the door may be locked.

Rear door child-protector lock

The door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle when the lock is set.

- 1 Unlock
- 2 Lock

These locks can be set to prevent children from opening the rear doors. Push down on each rear door switch to lock both rear doors.



Automatic door locking and unlocking systems

The following functions can be set or canceled:

For instructions on customizing, refer to P. 469.

Function	Operation
Speed linked door locking function	All doors are automatically locked when vehicle speed is approxi- mately 12 mph (20 km/h) or higher.
Shift position linked door locking function	All doors are automatically locked when shifting the shift lever to posi- tion other than P.
Shift position linked door unlocking function	All doors are automatically unlocked when shifting the shift lever to P.
Driver's door linked door unlocking function	All doors are automatically unlocked when driver's door is opened.

Using the mechanical key

The doors can also be locked and unlocked with the mechanical key. $(\rightarrow P. 430)$

If a wrong key is used

The key cylinder rotates freely to isolate inside mechanism.

Customization

Settings (e.g. unlocking function using a key) can be changed. (Customizable features: \rightarrow P. 469)

A CAUTION

To prevent an accident

Observe the following precautions while driving the vehicle.

Failure to do so may result in a door opening and an occupant throwing out of the vehicle, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Ensure that all doors are properly closed and locked.
- Do not pull the inside handle of the doors while driving.
 Be especially careful for the front doors, as the doors may be opened even if the inside lock buttons are in locked position.
- Set the rear door child-protector locks when children are seated in the rear seats.

132 3-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk

Trunk

The trunk can be opened using the trunk opener, entry function or wireless remote control.

Opening the trunk from inside the vehicle

Press the opener switch.



Opening the trunk from outside the vehicle

Entry function

→P. 111

Wireless remote control

→P. 126

When closing the trunk

Using the trunk grip, lower the trunk without applying force to the side and push the trunk down from the outside to close it.



Luggage security system

The trunk opener switch can be temporarily disabled to protect luggage stored in the trunk against theft.

Turn the main switch in the glove box off to disable the trunk opener.

(1) **On**

(2) Off

The trunk lid cannot be opened even with the wireless remote control or the entry function.



Trunk light

The trunk light turns on when the trunk is opened.

Function to prevent the trunk being locked with the electronic key inside

- When all doors are being locked, closing the trunk lid with the electronic key left inside the trunk will sound an alarm.
- In this case, the trunk lid can be opened pressing the trunk release button on the trunk lid.
- Even when the spare electronic key is put in the trunk with all the doors locked, the key confinement prevention function can be activated so the trunk can be opened. In order to prevent theft, take all electronic keys with you when leaving the vehicle.
- Even when the electronic key is put in the trunk with all the doors are locked, the key may not be detected depending on the places and the surrounding radio wave conditions. In this case, the key confinement prevention function cannot be activated, causing the doors to lock when the trunk is closed. Make sure to check where the key is before closing the trunk.
- The key confinement prevention function cannot be activated if any one of the doors is unlocked. In this case, open the trunk using the trunk opener.

Internal trunk release lever

The trunk lid can be opened by pulling the glow-in-the-dark lever located on the inside of the trunk lid.

The lever will continue to glow for some time after the trunk lid is closed.



134 3-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk

In case the trunk opener is not actuated

1 Pull down the rear armrest and open the door behind it.



2 Pull the loop of wire to unlock the trunk lid.

This is used in case the trunk lid cannot be unlocked due to a discharged battery or other trouble.



When leaving a key to the vehicle with a parking attendant

→P. 109

Customization

The trunk opener main switch can be deactivated. (Customizable feature: \rightarrow P. 469)

CAUTION

Observe the following precautions.

Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

Before driving

- Make sure that the trunk lid is fully closed. If the trunk lid is not fully closed, it may open unexpectedly while driving and hit near-by objects or luggage in the trunk may be thrown out, causing an accident.
- Do not allow children to play in the trunk.
 If a child is accidentally locked in the trunk, they could suffer from heat exhaustion, suffocation or other injuries.
- Do not allow a child to open or close the trunk lid.
 Doing so may cause the trunk lid to open unexpectedly, or cause the child's hands, head, or neck to be caught by the closing trunk lid.

Important points while driving

Never let anyone sit in the trunk. In the event of sudden braking or a collision, they are susceptible to death or serious injury.

Using the trunk

Observe the following precautions.

Failure to do so may cause parts of the body to be caught, resulting in serious injury.

- Remove any heavy loads, such as snow and ice, from the trunk lid before opening it. Failure to do so may cause the trunk lid to suddenly shut again after it is opened.
- When opening or closing the trunk lid, thoroughly check to make sure the surrounding area is safe.
- If anyone is in the vicinity, make sure they are safe and let them know that the trunk is about to open or close.
- Use caution when opening or closing the trunk lid in windy weather as it may move abruptly in strong wind.
- The trunk lid may suddenly shut if it is not opened fully. It is more difficult to open or close the trunk lid on an incline than on a level surface, so beware of the trunk lid unexpectedly opening or closing by itself. Make sure that the trunk lid is fully open and secure before using the trunk.
- When closing the trunk lid, take extra care to prevent your fingers etc. from being caught.
- When closing the trunk lid, make sure to press it lightly on its outer surface. If the trunk handle is used to fully close the trunk lid, it may result in hands or arms being caught.





 Do not attach any accessories other than genuine Toyota parts to the trunk lid. Such additional weight on the trunk lid may cause the lid to suddenly shut again after it is opened.

135

Operation of each component

136 3-3. Adjusting the seats

Front seats

Adjustment procedure

Driver's seat



Passenger's seat



- (1) Seat position adjustment switch (4) Vertical
- (2) Seatback angle adjustment switch
- adjustment switch (if equipped for passenger's seat)
- height adjustment switch (if equipped for passenger's seat)
- (3) Seat cushion (front) angle (5) Lumbar support adjustment switch (if equipped for passenger's seat)
 - (6) Seat cushion length adjustment switch (if equipped)

Power easy access system (vehicles with driving position memory)

The auto away/return function enables easy access by activating when the driver attempts to enter or exit the vehicle.

- When the power switch has been turned to ON mode or the driver's seat belt has been fastened, the driver's seat will move forward.
- When the power switch has been turned off and the driver's seat belt has been unfastened, the driver's seat will move backward.

Customization

Settings (e.g. driver's seat movement when exiting the vehicle) can be changed. (Customizable features: \rightarrow P. 469)

A CAUTION

When adjusting the seat position

- Take care when adjusting the seat position to ensure that other passengers are not injured by the moving seat.
- Do not put your hands under the seat or near the moving parts to avoid injury.

Fingers or hands may become jammed in the seat mechanism.

Seat adjustment

To reduce the risk of sliding under the lap belt during a collision, do not recline the seat more than necessary.

If the seat is too reclined, the lap belt may slide past the hips and apply restraint forces directly to the abdomen, or your neck may contact the shoulder belt, increasing the risk of death or serious injury in the event of an accident.

Adjustments should not be made while driving as the seat may unexpectedly move and cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.

When adjusting the seat positions

Make sure to leave enough space around the feet so they do not get stuck.

Driving position memory^{*}

This feature automatically adjusts the driver's seat and outside rear view mirrors to make entering and exiting the vehicle easier or to suit your preferences.

Power easy access system

The seat is automatically adjusted to allow the driver to enter and exit the vehicle easily.

When all of the following have been performed, the driver's seat is automatically adjusted to a position that allows driver to enter and exit the vehicle easily.

- The shift lever has been shifted to P.
- The power switch has been turned off.
- The driver's seat belt has been unfastened.

When any of the following is performed, the driver's seat automatically returns to its original position.

- The power switch has been turned to ACCESSORY or ON mode.
- The driver's seat belt has been fastened.

Operation of the power easy access system

When exiting the vehicle, the power easy access system may not operate if the seat is already close to the rearmost position, etc.

Customization

The seat movement amount settings of the power easy access system can be customized. (Customizable features: \rightarrow P. 469)



*: If equipped

Driving position memory

Your preferred driving position (the position of the driver's seat and outside rear view mirrors) can be recorded and recalled by pressing a button.

Two different driving positions can be recorded into memory.

Recording procedure

- 1 Check that the shift lever is in P.
- 2 Turn the power switch to ON mode.
- 3 Adjust the driver's seat and outside rear view mirrors to the desired positions.
- While pressing the "SET" button, or within 3 seconds after the "SET" button is pressed, press button "1" or "2" until the signal beeps.

If the selected button has already been preset, the previously recorded position will be overwritten.

Recall procedure

- 1 Check that the shift lever is in P.
- 2 Turn the power switch to ON mode.
- 3 Press button "1" or "2" to recall the desired position.



Operation of each component

CTY33AX009

139

- To stop the position recall operation part-way through
 - Perform any of the following:
 - Press the "SET" button.
 - Press button "1" or "2".
 - Adjust the seat using the switches (only cancels seat position recall).
- Seat positions that can be memorized (\rightarrow P. 136)

The seat position, with the exception of the portions adjusted by the seat cushion length switch and lumbar support switch, can be recorded.

- Operating the driving position memory after turning the power switch off Recorded seat positions can be activated up to 180 seconds after the driver's door is opened and another 60 seconds after it is closed again.
- In order to correctly use the driving position memory function

If a seat position is already in the furthest possible position and the seat is operated in the same direction, the recorded position may be slightly different when it is recalled.

Memory recall function

Each electronic key can be registered to recall your preferred driving position.

Registering procedure

Record your driving position to button "1" or "2" before performing the following:

Carrying only the key to which you want to link the driving position, shift the shift lever to P and then close the driver's door.

If 2 or more keys are in the vehicle, the driving position cannot be linked properly.

- 1 Turn the power switch to ON mode and recall the position which you want to link.
- 2 While pressing the button to recall the position, press the driver's door lock switch (either lock or unlock) until the signal beeps.

The driving position is recalled when the driver's door is unlocked using the entry function or wireless remote control and the driver's door is opened.



Operation of each component

Recall procedure

1 Carry the electronic key that has been registered to the driving position, and then unlock and open the driver's door using the smart key system or wireless remote control.

The driving position will move to the recorded position. However, the seat will move to a position slightly behind the recorded position in order to make entering the vehicle easier.

If the driving position is in a position that has already been recorded, the seat and outside rear view mirrors will not move.

2 Turn the power switch to ACCESSORY or ON mode, or fasten a seat belt.

The seat will move to the recorded position.

Cancelation procedure

Carry only the key to which you want to cancel the linked door unlock operation.

If 2 or more keys are in the vehicle, the driving position cannot be canceled properly.

- 1 Turn the power switch to ON mode.
- 2 While pressing the "SET" button, press the driver's door lock switch (either lock or unlock) until the signal beeps.

Recalling the driving position using the memory recall function

- Different driving positions can be registered for each electronic key. Therefore, the driving position that is recalled may be different depending on the key being carried.
- If a door other than the driver's door is unlocked with the smart key system, the driving position cannot be recalled. In this case, press the driving position button which has been set.

Customization

The unlock door settings of the memory recall function can be customized. (Customizable features: \rightarrow P. 469)

A CAUTION

Seat adjustment caution

Take care during seat adjustment so that the seat does not strike the rear passenger or squeeze your body against the steering wheel.

Head restraints

Head restraints are provided for all seats.

Front seats

Vertical adjustment

(1) Up

Pull the head restraints up.

2 Down

Push the head restraint down while pressing the lock release button.



(1)

Lock release button

Rear seats (except center seat)

① Up

Pull the head restraints up.

2 Down

Push the head restraint down while pressing the lock release button.

CTY33AX002

Operation of each component



Removing the head restraints (except rear center seat)

Pull the head restraint up while pressing the lock release button.



Installing the head restraints

▶ Front seats

Align the head restraint with the installation holes and push it down to the lock position.

Press and hold the lock release button when lowering the head restraint.



Rear seats (except center seat)

Align the head restraint with the installation holes and push it down to the lowest lock position while pressing the lock release button.



Adjusting the height of the head restraints (except rear center seat)

Make sure that the head restraints are adjusted so that the center of the head restraint is closest to the top of your ears.



Adjusting the rear seat head restraint (except center seat)

Always raise the head restraint one level from the stowed position when using.
3-3. Adjusting the seats

CAUTION Head restraint precautions Observe the following precautions regarding the head restraints. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury. Use the head restraints designed for each respective seat. Adjust the head restraints to the correct position at all times. After adjusting the head restraints, push down on them and make sure they are locked in position. Do not drive with the head restraints removed.

146 3-4. Adjusting the steering wheel and mirrors

Steering wheel

The steering wheel can be adjusted to a comfortable position.

Adjustment procedure

1 Hold the steering wheel and push the lever down.



After adjustment, pull the lever up to secure the steering wheel.





A CAUTION

Caution while driving

Do not adjust the steering wheel while driving. Doing so may cause the driver to mishandle the vehicle and cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

After adjusting the steering wheel

Make sure that the steering wheel is securely locked. Otherwise, the steering wheel may move suddenly, possibly causing an accident, and resulting in death or serious injury.

Inside rear view mirror

The rear view mirror's position can be adjusted to enable sufficient confirmation of the rear view.

Adjusting the height of rear view mirror

Adjust the height of the rear view mirror by moving it up and down.



Anti-glare function

Manual anti-glare inside rear view mirror Reflected light from the headlights of vehicles behind can be reduced by operating the lever.

- (1) Normal position
- (2) Anti-glare position



Operation of each component

Auto anti-glare inside rear view mirror

Responding to the level of brightness of the headlights of vehicles behind, the reflected light is automatically reduced.

Changing automatic anti-glare function mode

ON/OFF

When the automatic anti-glare function is in on mode, the indicator illuminates.

The function will set to on mode each time the power switch is turned to ON mode.

Pressing the button turns the function to off mode. (The indicator also turns off.)



To prevent sensor error (auto anti-glare type)

To ensure that the sensors operate properly, do not touch or cover them.



Do not adjust the position of the mirror while driving. Doing so may lead to mishandling of the vehicle and cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

Outside rear view mirrors

Adjustment procedure

1 To select a mirror to adjust, press the switch.

- (1) Left
- (2) Right



- 2 To adjust the mirror, press the switch.
 - (1) Up
 - (2) Right
 - 3 Down
 - (4) Left

Folding the mirrors

Push the mirror back in the direction of the vehicle's rear.



Operation of each component

CTY34AX003



Linked mirror function when reversing (vehicles with driving position memory)

When the mirror select switch is in the L or R position, the outside rear view mirrors will automatically angle downwards when the vehicle is reversing in order to give a better view of the ground.

To disable this function, move the mirror select switch to the neutral position (between L and R).

Adjusting the mirror angle when the vehicle is reversing

With the shift lever in R, adjust the mirror angle at a desired position. The adjusted angle will be memorized and the mirror will automatically tilt to the memorized angle whenever the shift lever is shifted to R from next time.

The memorized downward tilt position of the mirror is linked to the normal position (angle adjusted with the shift lever in other than R). Therefore, if the normal position is changed after adjustment, the tilt position will also change.

When the normal position is changed, readjust the angle in reversing.

Mirror angle can be adjusted when

The power switch is in ACCESSORY or ON mode.

When the mirrors are fogged up

The outside rear view mirrors can be cleared using the mirror defoggers. Turn on the rear window defogger to turn on the outside rear view mirror defoggers. (\rightarrow P. 273)

Automatic adjustment of the mirror angle (vehicles with driving position memory)

A desired mirror face angle can be entered to memory and recalled automatically by the driving position memory. (\rightarrow P. 138)

Auto anti-glare function (vehicles with outer foot lights)

When the anti-glare inside rear view mirror is set to automatic mode, the outside rear view mirrors will activate in conjunction with the anti-glare inside rear view mirror to reduce reflected light. (\rightarrow P. 147)



152 3-5. Opening, closing the windows and moon roof

Power windows

Opening and closing procedures

The power windows can be opened and closed using the switches. Operating the switch moves the windows as follows:

- 1 Closing
- (2) One-touch closing*
- ③ Opening
- (4) One-touch opening*
- *: To stop the window partway, operate the switch in the opposite direction.

Window lock switch

Press the switch to lock the passenger window switches.

Use this switch to prevent children from accidentally opening or closing a passenger window.





The power windows can be operated when

The power switch is in ON mode.

Operating the power windows after turning the hybrid system off

The power windows can be operated for approximately 45 seconds even after the power switch is turned to ACCESSORY mode or turned off. They cannot, however, be operated once either front door is opened.

Jam protection function

If an object becomes caught between the window and the window frame, window travel is stopped and the window is opened slightly.

When the power window does not close normally

If the jam protection function is operating abnormally and a window cannot be closed, perform the following operations using the power window switch on the relevant door.

- After stopping the vehicle, the window can be closed by holding the power window switch in the one-touch closing position while the power switch is turned to ON mode.
- If the window still cannot be closed even by carrying out the operation as explained above, initialize the function by performing the following procedure.
- Hold the power window switch in the one-touch closing position. Continue holding the switch for a further 6 seconds after the window has closed.
- 2 Hold the power window switch in the one-touch opening position. Continue holding the switch for a further 2 seconds after the window has opened completely.
- 3 Hold the power window switch in the one-touch closing position once again. Continue holding the switch for a further 2 seconds after the window has closed.

If you release the switch while the window is moving, start again from the beginning.

If the window continues to close but then re-open slightly even after performing the above procedure correctly, have the vehicle inspected by your Toyota dealer.

When the 12-volt battery is disconnected

The window lock switch is disabled. If necessary, press the window lock switch after reconnecting the 12-volt battery.

154 3-5. Opening, closing the windows and moon roof

A CAUTION

Observe the following precautions.

Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

Closing the windows

- The driver is responsible for all the power window operations, including the operation for the passengers. In order to prevent accidental operation, especially by a child, do not let a child operate the power windows. It is possible for children and other passengers to have body parts caught in the power window. Also, when riding with a child, it is recommended to use the window lock switch. (→P. 152)
- Check to make sure that all passengers do not have any part of their body in a position where it could be caught when a window is being operated.

When exiting the vehicle, turn the power switch off, carry the key and exit the vehicle along with the child. There may be accidental operation, due to mischief, etc., that may possibly lead to an accident.

Jam protection function

- Never use any part of your body to intentionally activate the jam protection function.
- The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the window fully closes.

Moon roof*

Use the overhead switches to open and close the moon roof and tilt it up and down.

Opening and closing

- (1) Opens the moon roof*
 - The moon roof stops slightly before the fully open position to reduce wind noise.

Press the switch again to fully open the moon roof.

- (2) Closes the moon roof*
- *: Lightly press either way of the moon roof switch to stop the moon roof partway.

Tilting up and down

- (1) Tilts the moon roof up*
- (2) Tilts the moon roof down*
- *: Lightly press either way of the moon roof switch to stop the moon roof partway.

CTY35AX008

*: If equipped

CTY35AX009

AVALON_HV_U (OM41457U)

The moon roof can be operated when

The power switch is in ON mode.

Operating the moon roof after turning the hybrid system off

The moon roof can be operated for approximately 45 seconds after the power switch is turned to ACCESSORY mode or turned off. It cannot, however, be operated once either front door is opened.

Jam protection function

If an object is detected between the moon roof and the frame while the moon roof is closing or tilting down, travel is stopped and the moon roof opens slightly.

Sunshade

The sunshade can be opened and closed manually. However, the sunshade will open automatically when the moon roof is opened.

When the moon roof does not close normally

Perform the following procedure:

• If the moon roof closes but then re-opens slightly

- 1 Stop the vehicle.
- 2 Press and hold the "CLOSE" switch.*1

The moon roof will close, reopen and pause for approximately 10 seconds.^{*2} Then it will close again, tilt up and pause for approximately 1 second. Finally, it will tilt down, open and close.

3 Check to make sure that the moon roof is completely closed and then release the switch.

If the moon roof tilts down but then tilts back up

- 1 Stop the vehicle.
- 2 Press and hold the "UP" switch^{*1} until the moon roof moves into the tilt up position and stops.
- 3 Release the "UP" switch once and then press and hold the "UP" switch again. *1

The moon roof will pause for approximately 10 seconds in the tilt up position.^{*2} Then it will adjust slightly and pause for approximately 1 second. Finally, it will tilt down, open and close.

- 4 Check to make sure that the moon roof is completely closed and then release the switch.
- *1: If the switch is released at the incorrect time, the procedure will have to be performed again from the beginning.
- *2: If the switch is released after the above mentioned 10 second pause, automatic operation will be disabled. In that case, press and hold the "CLOSE" or "UP" switch, and the moon roof will tilt up and pause for approximately 1 second. Then it will tilt down, open and close. Check to make sure that the moon roof is completely closed and then release the switch.

If the moon roof does not fully close even after performing the above procedure correctly, have the vehicle inspected by your Toyota dealer.

Moon roof open warning buzzer

The buzzer sounds and a message is shown on the multi-information display when the power switch is turned off and the driver's door is opened with the moon roof open.

158 3-5. Opening, closing the windows and moon roof

CAUTION Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury. Opening the moon roof • Do not allow any passengers to put their hands or heads outside the vehicle while it is moving. Do not sit on top of the moon roof. Closing the moon roof • The driver is responsible for moon roof opening and closing operations. In order to prevent accidental operation, especially by a child, do not let a child operate the moon roof. It is possible for children and other passengers to have body parts caught in the moon roof. Check to make sure that all passengers do not have any part of their body in a position where it could be caught when the moon roof is being operated. When exiting the vehicle, turn the power switch off, carry the key and exit the vehicle along with the child. There may be accidental operation, due to mischief, etc., that may possibly lead to an accident. Jam protection function Never use any part of your body to intentionally activate the jam protection function. • The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the moon roof fully closes.

Driving

4

4-1. Before driving

	Driving the vehicle 160
	Cargo and luggage 171
	Vehicle load limits 174
	Trailer towing 175
	Dinghy towing 176
4-2.	Driving procedures
	Power (ignition) switch 177
	EV drive mode 183
	Hybrid transmission 185
	Turn signal lever 188
	Parking brake 189
	Horn 190
4-3.	Operating the lights and wipers
	Headlight switch 191
	Automatic High Beam 195
	Fog light switch 200
	Windshield wipers and
	washer 201

4-4. Refueling Opening the fuel tank cap 206 4-5. Using the driving support systems Cruise control..... 211 Dynamic radar cruise control 215 Driving mode select switch...... 230 Driving assist systems 232 Hill-start assist control 237 PCS (Pre-Collision System)..... 239 BSM (Blind Spot Monitor) 245

4-6. Driving tips Hybrid vehicle driving

riybhu venicie unving	
tips	254
Winter driving tips	256

Driving the vehicle

The following procedures should be observed to ensure safe driving:

Starting the hybrid system

→P. 177

Driving

- 1 With the brake pedal depressed, shift the shift lever to D. (\rightarrow P. 185)
- 2 Release the parking brake. (\rightarrow P. 189)
- 3 Gradually release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal to accelerate the vehicle.

Stopping

- 1 With the shift lever in D, depress the brake pedal until the vehicle comes to a stop.
- 2 If necessary, set the parking brake.

If the vehicle is to be stopped for an extended period of time, shift the shift lever to P. (\rightarrow P. 185)

Parking the vehicle

- 1 With the shift lever in D, depress the brake pedal.
- 2 Set the parking brake. (\rightarrow P. 189)
- 3 Shift the shift lever to P. (\rightarrow P. 185)
- 4 Press the power switch to stop the hybrid system.
- 5 Lock the door, making sure that you have the electronic key on your person.

If parking on a hill, block the wheels as needed.

Starting off on a steep uphill

1 Make sure that the parking brake is set and shift the shift lever to D.

- 2 Gently depress the accelerator pedal.
- 3 Release the parking brake.

When starting off on a uphill

The hill-start assist control is available. (\rightarrow P. 237)

Driving in the rain

- Drive carefully when it is raining, because visibility will be reduced, the windows may become fogged-up, and the road will be slippery.
- Drive carefully when it starts to rain, because the road surface will be especially slippery.
- Refrain from driving at high speeds in the rain, as there may be a layer of water between the tires and the road surface, preventing the steering and brakes from operating properly.

Engine speed while driving

In the following conditions, the engine speed may become high while driving. This is due to automatic up-shifting control or down-shifting implementation to meet driving conditions. It does not indicate sudden acceleration.

The vehicle is judged to be driving uphill or downhill

• When the accelerator pedal is released

Breaking in your new Toyota

To extend the life of the vehicle, observing the following precautions is recommended:

- For the first 186 miles (300 km): Avoid sudden stops.
- For the first 621 miles (1000 km):
 - · Do not drive at extremely high speeds.
 - Avoid sudden acceleration.
 - Do not drive continuously in low gears.
 - Do not drive at a constant speed for extended periods.

Drum-in-disc type parking brake system

Your vehicle has a drum-in-disc type parking brake system. This type of brake system needs bedding-down of the brake shoes periodically or whenever the parking brake shoes and/or drum are replaced. Have your Toyota dealer perform the bedding down operation.

Operating your vehicle in a foreign country

Comply with the relevant vehicle registration laws and confirm the availability of the correct fuel. (\rightarrow P. 453)

For efficient use

Shift the shift lever to D when driving.

In the N position, the gasoline engine operates but electricity cannot be generated. The hybrid battery (traction battery) will discharge, requiring unnecessary engine power to recharge.

Drive your vehicle smoothly.

Avoid abrupt acceleration and deceleration. Gradual acceleration and deceleration will make more effective use of the electric motor (traction motor) without having to use gasoline engine power.

Avoid repeated acceleration.

Repeated acceleration consumes hybrid battery (traction battery) power, resulting in poor acceleration. Battery power can be restored by driving with the accelerator pedal slightly released.

Shift the shift lever to P when parking.

In the N position, the hybrid battery (traction battery) does not recharge. Leaving the shift lever in the N position for an extended period of time may discharge the hybrid battery (traction battery). The vehicle cannot run if the hybrid battery (traction battery) is discharged.

4-1. Before driving

CAUTION Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury. When starting the vehicle Always keep your foot on the brake pedal while stopped with the hybrid system operating. This prevents the vehicle from creeping. When driving the vehicle Do not drive if you are unfamiliar with the location of the brake and accelerator pedals to avoid depressing the wrong pedal. · Accidentally depressing the accelerator pedal instead of the brake pedal will result in sudden acceleration that may lead to an accident. · When backing up, you may twist your body around, leading to a difficulty in operating the pedals. Make sure to operate the pedals properly. • Make sure to keep a correct driving posture even when moving the vehicle only slightly. This allows you to depress the brake and accelerator pedals properly. • Depress the brake pedal using your right foot. Depressing the brake Driving pedal using your left foot may delay response in an emergency, resulting in an accident. The driver should pay extra attention to pedestrians when the vehicle is powered only by the electric motor (traction motor). Because there is no engine noise, the pedestrians may misjudge the vehicle's movement. Do not drive the vehicle over or stop the vehicle near flammable materials. The exhaust system and exhaust gases can be extremely hot. These hot parts may cause a fire if there is any flammable material nearby.

A CAUTION

Observe the following precautions.

Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

When driving the vehicle

During normal driving, do not turn off the hybrid system. Turning the hybrid system off while driving will not cause loss of steering or braking control, however, power assist to the steering will be lost. This will make it more difficult to steer smoothly, so you should pull over and stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

In the event of an emergency, such as if it becomes impossible to stop the vehicle in the normal way: \rightarrow P. 399

 Use engine braking (downshift) to maintain a safe speed when driving down a steep hill.

Using the brakes continuously may cause the brakes to overheat and lose effectiveness. (\rightarrow P. 185)

 Do not adjust the positions of the steering wheel, the seat, or the inside or outside rear view mirrors while driving.

Doing so may result in a loss of vehicle control.

- Always check that all passengers' arms, heads or other parts of their body are not outside the vehicle.
- Do not drive in excess of the speed limit. Even if the legal speed limit permits it, do not drive over 85 mph (140 km/h) unless your vehicle has high-speed capability tires. Driving over 85 mph (140 km/h) may result in tire failure, loss of control and possible injury. Be sure to consult a tire dealer to determine whether the tires on your vehicle are high-speed capability tires or not before driving at such speeds.

4-1. Before driving



CAUTION

Observe the following precautions.

Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

If you hear a squealing or scraping noise (brake pad wear limit indicators)

Have the brake pads checked and replaced by your Toyota dealer as soon as possible.

Rotor damage may result if the pads are not replaced when needed.

It is dangerous to drive the vehicle when the wear limits of the brake pads and/or those of the brake discs are exceeded.

When the vehicle is stopped

Do not depress the accelerator pedal unnecessarily.
 If the vehicle is in any gear other than P or N, the vehicle may accelerate suddenly and unexpectedly, causing an accident.

- In order to prevent accidents due to the vehicle rolling away, always keep depressing the brake pedal while the "READY" indicator is on, and apply the parking brake as necessary.
- If the vehicle is stopped on an incline, in order to prevent accidents caused by the vehicle rolling forward or backward, always depress the brake pedal and securely apply the parking brake as needed.

Avoid revving or racing the engine. Running the engine at high speed while the vehicle is stopped may cause the exhaust system to overheat, which could result in a fire if combustible material is nearby.

4-1. Before driving



Observe the following precautions.

Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

When taking a nap in the vehicle

Always turn the hybrid system off. Otherwise, if you accidentally move the shift lever or depress the accelerator pedal, this could cause an accident or fire due to hybrid system overheating. Additionally, if the vehicle is parked in a poorly ventilated area, exhaust gases may collect and enter the vehicle, leading to death or a serious health hazard.

When braking

• When the brakes are wet, drive more cautiously.

Braking distance increases when the brakes are wet, and this may cause one side of the vehicle to brake differently than the other side. Also, the parking brake may not securely hold the vehicle.

 If the electronically controlled brake system does not operate, do not follow other vehicles closely and avoid hills or sharp turns that require braking.

In this case, braking is still possible, but the brake pedal should be depressed more firmly than usual. Also, the braking distance will increase. Have your brakes fixed immediately.

The brake system consists of 2 or more individual hydraulic systems; if one of the systems fails, the other(s) will still operate. In this case, the brake pedal should be depressed more firmly than usual and the braking distance will increase. Have your brakes fixed immediately.

4-1. Before driving

NOTICE /i\ When driving the vehicle Do not depress the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time during driving, as this may restrain driving torque. • Do not use the accelerator pedal or depress the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time to hold the vehicle on a hill. When parking the vehicle Always shift the shift lever to P. Failure to do so may cause the vehicle to move or the vehicle may accelerate suddenly if the accelerator pedal is accidentally depressed. Avoiding damage to vehicle parts Do not turn the steering wheel fully in either direction and hold it there for an extended period of time. Doing so may damage the power steering motor. • When driving over bumps in the road, drive as slowly as possible to avoid damaging the wheels, underside of the vehicle, etc. If you get a flat tire while driving A flat or damaged tire may cause the following situations. Hold the steering wheel firmly and gradually depress the brake pedal to slow down the vehicle. • It may be difficult to control your vehicle. The vehicle will make abnormal sounds or vibrations. The vehicle will behave abnormally. Information on what to do in case of a flat tire (\rightarrow P. 415)

169

Driving

When encountering flooded roads

Do not drive on a road that has flooded after heavy rain etc. Doing so may cause the following serious damage to the vehicle:

- Engine stalling
- Short in electrical components
- Engine damage caused by water immersion

In the event that you drive on a flooded road and the vehicle is flooded, be sure to have your Toyota dealer check the following:

- Brake function
- Changes in quantity and quality of oil and fluid used for the engine, transmission, etc.
- Lubricant condition for the bearings and suspension joints (where possible), and the function of all joints, bearings, etc.

Cargo and luggage

Take notice of the following information about storage precautions, cargo capacity and load:

Capacity and distribution

Cargo capacity depends on the total weight of the occupants.

(Cargo capacity) = (Total load capacity) — (Total weight of occupants)

Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit —

- (1) Locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs." on your vehicle's placard.
- (2) Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
- (3) Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs.

(4) The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity.

For example, if the "XXX" amount equals 1400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lb passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs. $(1400 - 750 (5 \times 150) = 650 \text{ lbs.})$

- (5) Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
- (6) If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

(→P. 174)

Toyota does not recommend towing a trailer with your vehicle. Your vehicle is not designed for trailer towing.

- -



- 1 Cargo capacity
- ② Total load capacity (vehicle capacity weight)
 (→P. 444)



When 2 people with the combined weight of A lb. (kg) are riding in your vehicle, which has a total load capacity (vehicle capacity weight) of B lb. (kg), the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity will be C lb. (kg) as follows:

 B^{*2} lb. (kg) - A^{*1} lb. (kg) = C^{*3} lb. (kg)

- *1: A = Weight of people
- *2: B = Total load capacity
- *3: C = Available cargo and luggage load

In this condition, if 3 more passengers with the combined weight of D

Ib. (kg) get on, the available cargo and luggage load will be reduced E lb. (kg) as follows:

C lb. (kg) - D^{*4} lb. (kg) = E^{*5} lb. (kg)

*4: D = Additional weight of people

*5: E = Available cargo and luggage load

As shown in the example above, if the number of occupants increases, the cargo and luggage load will be reduced by an amount that equals the increased weight due to the additional occupants. In other words, if an increase in the number of occupants causes an excess of the total load capacity (combined weight of occupants plus cargo and luggage load), you must reduce the cargo and luggage on your vehicle.

4-1. Before driving



may cause death or serious injury.

Vehicle load limits

Vehicle load limits include total load capacity, seating capacity, towing capacity and cargo capacity.

◆ Total load capacity (vehicle capacity weight): (→P. 444)

Total load capacity means the combined weight of occupants, cargo and luggage.

Seating capacity: 5 occupants (Front 2, Rear 3)

Seating capacity means the maximum number of occupants whose estimated average weight is 150 lb. (68 kg) per person.

Towing capacity

Toyota does not recommend towing a trailer with your vehicle.

Cargo capacity

Cargo capacity may increase or decrease depending on the weight and the number of occupants.

Total load capacity and seating capacity

These details are also described on the tire and loading information label. $(\rightarrow P. 361)$

CAUTION

Overloading the vehicle

Do not overload the vehicle. It may not only cause damage to the tires, but also degrade steering and braking ability, resulting in an accident.

175

Trailer towing

Toyota does not recommend towing a trailer with your vehicle. Toyota also does not recommend the installation of a tow hitch or the use of a tow hitch carrier for a wheelchair, scooter, bicycle, etc. Your vehicle is not designed for trailer towing or for the use of tow hitch mounted carriers.



Driving

AVALON_HV_U (OM41457U)

176 4-1. Before driving

Dinghy towing

Your vehicle is not designed to be dinghy towed (with 4 wheels on the ground) behind a motor home.



To avoid serious damage to your vehicle

Do not tow your vehicle with the four wheels on the ground.

Power (ignition) switch

Performing the following operations when carrying the electronic key on your person starts the hybrid system or changes power switch modes.

Starting the hybrid system

- 1 Check that the parking brake is set.
- 2 Check that the shift lever is set in P.
- 3 Firmly depress the brake pedal.

Messages indicating how to start the hybrid system and how to turn to ACCESSORY mode will be displayed alternately on the multi-information display.

4 Press the power switch.

Continue depressing the brake pedal until the hybrid system is completely started.

The hybrid system can be started from any power switch mode.

5 Check that the "READY" indicator is on.

The vehicle will not move when the "READY" indicator is off.



D

Driving

177

AVALON_HV_U (OM41457U)

Stopping the hybrid system

- 1 Stop the vehicle.
- 2 Shift the shift lever to P.
- 3 Set the parking brake. (\rightarrow P. 189)
- 4 Press the power switch.

Driving-related data will be displayed on the multi-information display. $(\rightarrow P. 100)$

Changing power switch modes

Modes can be changed by pressing the power switch with brake pedal released. (The mode changes each time the switch is pressed.)

Off*

The emergency flashers can be used.

The multi-information display will not be displayed.

ACCESSORY mode

Some electrical components such as the audio system can be used.

A message indicating how to start the hybrid system will be displayed on the multi-information display.

ON mode

All electrical components can be used.

*: If the shift lever is in a position other than P when turning off the hybrid system, the power switch will be turned to ACCESSORY mode, not to off.



When stopping the hybrid system with the shift lever in a position other than P

If the hybrid system is stopped with the shift lever in a position other than P, a message indicating to shift the shift lever to P will be displayed on the multi-information display. At this time, the power switch will not be turned off but instead be turned to ACCESSORY mode. Perform the following procedure to turn the switch off:

- 1 Check that the parking brake is set.
- 2 Shift the shift lever to P.
- 3 Check that "Turn Power OFF" is displayed on the multi-information display and then press the power switch once.
- 4 Check that "Turn Power OFF" on the multi-information display is turned off.

Auto power off function

If the vehicle is left in ACCESSORY mode for more than 20 minutes or ON mode (the hybrid system is not operating) for more than an hour with the shift lever in P, the power switch will automatically turn off. However, this function cannot entirely prevent 12-volt battery discharge. Do not leave the vehicle with the power switch in ACCESSORY or ON mode for long periods of time when the hybrid system is not operating.

Sounds and vibrations specific to a hybrid vehicle

→P. 72

Electronic key battery depletion

→P. 124

When the ambient temperature is low, such as during winter driving conditions

It may take time until the "READY" indicator comes on.

Conditions affecting operation

→P. 120

Notes for the entry function

→P. 121

If the hybrid system does not start

- The immobilizer system may not have been deactivated. (→P. 79) Contact your Toyota dealer.
- Check that the shift lever is securely set in P. The hybrid system may not start if the shift lever is displaced out of P.

Steering lock

After turning the power switch off and opening and closing the doors, the steering wheel will be locked due to the steering lock function. Operating the power switch again automatically cancels the steering lock.

When the steering lock cannot be released

A message informing the driver that the steering wheel is locked will be displayed on the multi-information display.

Check that the shift lever is set in P. Press the power switch while turning the steering wheel left and right.



Steering lock motor overheating prevention

To prevent the steering lock motor from overheating, the motor may be suspended if the hybrid system is turned on and off repeatedly in a short period of time. In this case, refrain from operating the hybrid system. After about 10 seconds, the steering lock motor will resume functioning.

When a message requesting the smart key system be inspected is displayed on the multi-information display

The system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by your Toyota dealer immediately.

If the "READY" indicator does not come on

If the "READY" indicator does not come on when you press the power switch with the shift lever in P and the brake pedal depressed, contact your Toyota dealer immediately.

If the hybrid system is malfunctioning

→P. 74

If the electronic key battery is depleted

→P. 369
Operation of the power switch

- When operating the power switch, one short, firm press is enough. If the switch is pressed improperly, the hybrid system may not start or the power switch mode may not change. It is not necessary to press and hold the switch.
- If attempting to restart the hybrid system immediately after turning the power switch off, the hybrid system may not start in some cases. After turning the power switch off, please wait a few seconds before restarting the hybrid system.

If the smart key system has been deactivated in a customized setting

→P. 430

Customization

The time elapsed before the power switch related messages on the multiinformation display turn off can be changed. (Customizable features: \rightarrow P. 469)

AUTION

When starting the hybrid system

Always start the hybrid system while sitting in the driver's seat. Do not depress the accelerator pedal while starting the hybrid system under any circumstances.

Doing so may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

Caution while driving

If hybrid system failure occurs while the vehicle is moving, do not lock or open the doors until the vehicle reaches a safe and complete stop. Activation of the steering lock in this circumstance may lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

Stopping the hybrid system in an emergency

If you want to stop the hybrid system in an emergency while driving the vehicle, press and hold the power switch for more than 2 seconds, or press it briefly 3 times or more in succession. (\rightarrow P. 399)

However, do not touch the power switch while driving except in an emergency. Turning the hybrid system off while driving will not cause loss of steering or braking control, however, power assist to the steering will be lost. This will make it more difficult to steer smoothly, so you should pull over and stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Driving

🕂 NOTICE

To prevent 12-volt battery discharge

- Do not leave the power switch in ACCESSORY or ON mode for long periods of time without the hybrid system on.
- Do not stop the hybrid system when the shift lever is in a position other than P. If the hybrid system is stopped in another shift lever position, the power switch will not be turned off but instead be turned to ACCESSORY mode. If the vehicle is left in ACCESSORY mode, 12-volt battery discharge may occur.

When starting the hybrid system

- Do not depress the accelerator pedal unnecessarily.
- If the hybrid system becomes difficult to start, have your vehicle checked by your Toyota dealer immediately.

Symptoms indicating a malfunction with the power switch

If the power switch seems to be operating somewhat differently than usual, such as the switch sticking slightly, there may be a malfunction. Contact your Toyota dealer immediately.

EV drive mode

In EV drive mode the electric motor (traction motor), powered by the hybrid battery (traction battery), is used to drive the vehicle.

This mode allows you to drive in residential areas early in the morning and late at night, or in indoor parking lots etc. without concern for noises and gas emissions.

However, when the vehicle proximity notification system is active, the vehicle may produce sound.

Turns EV drive mode on/off

When EV drive mode is turned on, a message indicating the vehicle is in EV drive mode will be shown on the multi-information display. Pressing the switch when in EV drive mode will return the vehicle to normal driving (using the gasoline engine and electric motor [traction motor]).



Situations in which EV drive mode cannot be turned on

It may not be possible to turn EV drive mode on in the following situations. If it cannot be turned on, a buzzer will sound and a message will be shown on the multi-information display.

- The temperature of the hybrid system is high.
 The vehicle has been left in the sun, driven on a hill, driven at high speeds, etc.
- The temperature of the hybrid system is low.
 The vehicle has been left in temperatures lower than about 68°F (20°C) for a long period of time etc.
- The gasoline engine is warming up.
- The hybrid battery (traction battery) is low.
 The remaining battery level indicated in the energy monitor on the multiinformation display is low. (→P. 102)
- Vehicle speed is about 25 mph (40 km/h) or more.
- The accelerator pedal is depressed firmly or the vehicle is on a hill etc.
- The windshield defogger is in use.

Switching to EV drive mode when the gasoline engine is cold

If the hybrid system is started while the gasoline engine is cold, the gasoline engine will start automatically after a short period of time in order to warm up. In this case, you will become unable to switch to EV drive mode.

After the hybrid system has started and the "READY" indicator has illuminated, press the EV drive mode switch before the gasoline engine starts to switch to EV drive mode.

Automatic cancelation of EV drive mode

When driving in EV drive mode, the gasoline engine may automatically restart in the following situations. When EV drive mode is canceled, a buzzer will sound and the EV drive mode indicator will flash and go off.

- The hybrid battery (traction battery) becomes low.
 - The remaining battery level indicated in the energy monitor on the multiinformation display is low. (\rightarrow P. 102)
- Vehicle speed becomes more than about 25 mph (40 km/h).
- The accelerator pedal is depressed firmly.

Possible driving distance when driving in EV drive mode

EV drive mode's possible driving distance ranges from a few hundred meters to approximately 1.3 miles (2 km). Driving is possible at speeds of less than approximately 25 mph (40 km/h). However, depending on vehicle conditions, there are situations when EV drive mode cannot be used.

(The distance that is possible depends on the hybrid battery [traction battery] level and driving conditions.)

Fuel economy

Your Toyota is designed to achieve the best possible fuel economy during normal driving (using the gasoline engine and electric motor [traction motor]). Driving in EV drive mode more than necessary may lower fuel economy.

A CAUTION

Caution while driving

When driving in EV drive mode no engine noise is made. As such, pedestrians, people riding bicycles or other people and vehicles in the surrounding area may not be aware of the vehicle starting off or approaching them. Therefore, take extra care while driving even if the vehicle proximity notification system is active.

Hybrid transmission

Shifting the shift lever



-

While the power switch is in ON mode, move the shift lever with the brake pedal depressed.

When shifting the shift lever between P and D, make sure that the vehicle is completely stopped.

Shift position purpose

Shift position	Objective or function
Р	Parking the vehicle/starting the hybrid system
R	Reversing
N	Neutral
D	Normal driving ^{*1}
S	S mode driving ^{*2} (\rightarrow P. 186)

*1: To improve fuel efficiency and reduce noises, set the shift lever in the D position for normal driving.

*2: By selecting shift ranges using S mode, you can control engine braking force.

Driving

Selecting shift ranges in the S position

To enter S mode, shift the shift lever to S. Shift ranges can then be selected by operating the shift lever, allowing you to drive in the shift range of your choosing.

- (1) Upshifting
- (2) Downshifting

The selected shift range, from S1 to S6, will be displayed in the meter.

The initial shift range in S mode is automatically set to S4 or S5 according to vehicle speed.



- Shift ranges and their functions
 - You can choose from 6 levels of engine braking force.
 - A lower shift range will provide greater engine braking force than a higher shift range. The engine speed will also increase.
 - If you accelerate while in ranges S1 to S4, the shift range may automatically range up in accordance with the vehicle's speed.

S mode

- When the shift range is S4 or lower, holding the shift lever toward "+" sets the shift range to S6.
- To prevent the engine from over-revving, upshifting may automatically occur.

Tachometer

When the S mode driving is selected, the tachometer will be displayed on the multiinformation display. The tachometer displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute.



Downshifting restrictions warning buzzer

To help ensure safety and driving performance, downshifting operation may sometimes be restricted. In some circumstances, downshifting may not be possible even when the shift lever is operated. (A buzzer will sound twice.) When driving with cruise control or radar cruise control activated

Even if switching the driving mode to power mode with the intent of enabling engine braking, engine braking will not activate because cruise control or radar cruise control will not be canceled. (\rightarrow P. 211, 215)

If the S indicator does not come on or the D indicator is displayed even after shifting the shift lever to S

This may indicate a malfunction in the automatic transmission system. Have the vehicle inspected by your Toyota dealer immediately.

(In this situation, the transmission will operate in the same manner as when the shift lever is in D.)

If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P

→P. 429

AI-SHIFT

AI-SHIFT automatically selects the suitable gear according to driver performance and driving conditions.

AI-SHIFT automatically operates when the shift lever is in the D position. (Shifting the shift lever to the S position cancels the function.)

A CAUTION

When driving on slippery road surfaces

Do not accelerate or shift gears suddenly. Sudden changes in engine braking may cause the vehicle to spin or skid, resulting in an accident.

🔨 NOTICE

Hybrid battery (traction battery) charge

If the shift lever is in N, the hybrid battery (traction battery) will not be charged even when the engine is running. Therefore, if the vehicle is left with the shift lever in N for a long period of time, the hybrid battery (traction battery) will discharge, and this may result in the vehicle not being able to start.

Turn signal lever

Operating instructions

The lever will return to its original position after operation.

- 1 Right turn
- (2) Lane change to the right (move the lever partway and release it)

The right hand signals will flash 3 times.

 (3) Lane change to the left (move the lever partway and release it)

The left hand signals will flash 3 times.

(4) Left turn



Turn signals can be operated when

The power switch is in ON mode.

If the indicator flashes faster than usual

Check that a light bulb in the front or rear turn signal lights has not burned out.

If the turn signals stop flashing before a lane change has been performed

Operate the lever again.

- To discontinue flashing of the turn signals during a lane change Operate the lever in the opposite direction.
- When the lever is pushed and held partway The turn signals will keep flashing until the lever is released.
- Customization

The number of times the turn signals flash during a lane change can be changed. (Customizable feature \rightarrow P. 469)

4-2. Driving procedures

Parking brake

To set the parking brake, fully depress the parking brake pedal with your left foot while depressing the brake pedal with your right foot.

(Depressing the pedal again releases the parking brake.)



Usage in winter time

→P. 257

Before driving

Fully release the parking brake.

Driving the vehicle with the parking brake set will lead to brake components overheating, which may affect braking performance and increase brake wear.

Driving

189

190 4-2. Driving procedures

Horn

To sound the horn, press on or close to the mark.



After adjusting the steering wheel

Make sure that the steering wheel is securely locked. The horn may not sound if the steering wheel is not securely locked. $(\rightarrow P. 146)$

Headlight switch

The headlights can be operated manually or automatically.

Operating instructions

Turning the end of the lever turns on the lights as follows:

- AUTO The headlights, parking lights, daytime running lights and so on turn on and off automatically (when the power switch is in ON mode).
- (2) SOCE The side marker, parking, tail, license plate, daytime running lights and instrument panel lights turn on.
- ③ ≣○ The headlights and all the lights listed above (except daytime running lights) turn on.
- (4) DRL OFF The daytime running lights turn off.



192 4-3. Operating the lights and wipers

Turning on the high beam headlights

(1) With the headlights on, push the lever away from you to turn on the high beams.

Pull the lever toward you to the center position to turn the high beams off.

(2) Pull the lever toward you and release it to flash the high beams once.

You can flash the high beams with the headlights on or off.



Daytime running light system

• Vehicles with halogen headlights: To make your vehicle more visible to other drivers, the headlight high beam turn on automatically (at a decreased intensity) whenever the hybrid system is started and the parking brake is released. Daytime running lights are not designed for use at night.

Vehicles with discharge headlights: To make your vehicle more visible to other drivers, the parking lights turn on automatically (at an increased intensity) whenever the hybrid system is started and the parking brake is released. Daytime running lights are not designed for use at night. Daytime running lights can be turned off by operating the switch.

 Compared to turning on the headlights, the daytime running light system offers greater durability and consumes less electricity, so it can help improve fuel economy.

Headlight control sensor

The sensor may not function properly if an object is placed on the sensor, or anything that blocks the sensor is affixed to the windshield.

Doing so interferes with the sensor detecting the level of ambient light and may cause the automatic headlight system to malfunction.



Automatic light off system

When the headlights are on: The headlights and tail lights turn off 30 seconds after the power switch is turned off and a door is opened and all of the

doors and trunk are closed. (The lights turn off immediately if **a** on the key is pressed twice after all the doors are closed.)

• When only the tail lights are on: The tail lights turn off automatically if the power switch is turned off and the driver's door is opened.

To turn the lights on again, turn the power switch to ON mode, or turn the light

switch off once and then back to ≥o∈ or ≣D.

If any of the doors or trunk lid is kept open, the lights automatically turn off after 20 minutes.

Light reminder buzzer

A buzzer sounds when the power switch is turned off or turned to ACCES-SORY mode and the driver's door is opened while the lights are turned on.

Automatic headlight leveling system (if equipped)

The level of the headlights is automatically adjusted according to the number of passengers and the loading condition of the vehicle to ensure that the headlights do not interfere with other road users.

Customization

Settings (e.g. light sensor sensitivity) can be changed. (Customizable features: \rightarrow P. 469)

To prevent 12-volt battery discharge

Do not leave the lights on longer than necessary when the hybrid system is off.

Automatic High Beam*

The Automatic High Beam uses an in-vehicle camera sensor to assess the brightness of streetlights, the lights of oncoming and preceding vehicles, etc., and automatically turns high beam on or off as necessary.

Activating the Automatic High Beam system

1 Put the headlight switch in the "AUTO" position.



4

Driving

2 Push the lever away from you. The Automatic High Beam indicator will come on when the head-

lights are turned on automatically to indicate that the system is active. CTY43AX022

*: If equipped

High beam automatic turning on or off conditions

When all of the following conditions are fulfilled, high beam will be automatically turned on (after approximately 1 second):

- Vehicle speed is above approximately 25 mph (40 km/h).
- The area ahead of the vehicle is dark.
- There are no oncoming or preceding vehicles with headlights or tail lights turned on.

If any of the following conditions are fulfilled, high beam will be automatically turned off:

- Vehicle speed drops below approximately 19 mph (30 km/h).
- The area ahead of the vehicle is not dark.

Turning the high beam on/off manually

Switching to low beam

Pull the lever to original position.



Switching to high beam

Turn the light switch to **SOLUTION**

The Automatic High Beam indicator will turn off and the high beam indicator will turn on.

Press the switch to activate the Automatic High Beam system again.



The Automatic High Beam can be operated when

The power switch is in ON mode.

Camera sensor detection information

High beam may not be automatically turned off in the following situations:

- When oncoming vehicles suddenly appear from a curve
- When the vehicle is cut in front of by another
- High beam may be turned off if an oncoming vehicle that is using fog lights without using the headlights is detected.
- House lights, street lights, red traffic signals, and illuminated billboards or signs may cause the high beam to turn off.
- The following factors may affect the amount of time taken to turn high beam on or off:
 - The brightness of headlights, fog lights, and tail lights of oncoming and preceding vehicles
 - The condition of the road (gradient, curve, condition of the road surface etc.)
 - The number of passengers and amount of luggage
- High beam may be turned on or off when unexpected by the driver.

197

- In the situations below, the system may not be able to correctly detect the surrounding brightness levels, and may flash or expose nearby pedestrians to the high beam. Therefore, you should consider turning the high beams on or off manually rather than relying on the Automatic High Beam system.
 - In bad weather (rain, snow, fog, sandstorms etc.)
 - The windshield is obscured by fog, mist, ice, dirt etc.
 - The windshield is cracked or damaged.
 - The inside rear view mirror or camera sensor is deformed or dirty.
 - Surrounding brightness levels are equal to those of headlights, tail lights or fog lights.
 - Vehicles ahead have headlights that are either switched off, dirty, are changing color, or have are not aimed properly.
 - When driving through an area of intermittently changing brightness and darkness.
 - When frequently and repeatedly driving ascending/descending roads, or roads with rough, bumpy or uneven surfaces (such as stone-paved roads, gravel tracks etc.).
 - When frequently and repeatedly taking curves or driving on a winding road.
 - There is a highly reflective object ahead of the vehicle, such as a sign or a mirror.
 - The vehicle's headlights are damaged or dirty.
 - The vehicle is listing or tilting, due to a flat tire etc.
 - The driver believes that the high beam may be causing problems or distress to other drivers or pedestrians nearby.

If the Automatic High Beam indicator flashes

It may indicate a malfunction in the system. Contact your Toyota dealer.

Customization

The automatic high beam can be deactivated. (Customizable feature: \rightarrow P. 469)

A CAUTION

Limitations of the Automatic High Beam

Do not rely on the Automatic High Beam. Always drive safely, taking care to observe your surroundings and turning high beam on or off manually if necessary.

199



Fog light switch*

The fog lights secure excellent visibility in difficult driving conditions, such as in rain and fog.

- (1) OFF Turns the front fog lights off
- ② ŧ) Turns the front fog lights on



Fog lights can be used when The headlights are on in low beam.

*: If equipped

Windshield wipers and washer

Intermittent wiper with interval adjuster (if equipped)

Wiper intervals can be adjusted for intermittent operation (when INT is selected).

- (1) INT Intermittent wiper operation
- LO Low speed wiper operation
- ③ HI High speed wiper operation
- (4) MIST Temporary operation



4

Driving

- (5) Increases the intermittent windshield wiper frequency
- (6) Decreases the intermittent windshield wiper frequency



3

CTY43AX008

202 4-3. Operating the lights and wipers

Washer/wiper dual operation

Wipers will automatically operate a couple of times after the washer squirts.



Rain-sensing windshield wipers (if equipped)

With "AUTO" selected, the wipers will operate automatically when the sensor detects falling rain. The system automatically adjusts wiper timing in accordance with rain volume and vehicle speed.

- (1) AUTO Rain-sensing wiper operation
- LO Low speed wiper operation
- ③ HI High speed wiper operation
- (4) MIST Temporary operation





4

Driving

- (5) Increases the sensitivity
- (6) Decreases the sensitivity



Washer/wiper dual operation

Wipers will automatically operate a couple of times after the washer squirts.



The windshield wiper and washer can be operated when

The power switch is in ON mode.

Effects of vehicle speed on wiper operation (vehicles with rain-sensing windshield wipers)

With low speed windshield wiper operation selected, wiper operation will be switched from low speed to intermittent wiper operation only when the vehicle is stationary.

Raindrop sensor (vehicles with rain-sensing windshield wipers)

 The raindrop sensor judges the amount of raindrops.

An optical sensor is adopted. It may not operate properly when sunlight from the rising or setting of the sun intermittently strikes the windshield, or if bugs etc. are present on the windshield.



- If the wiper is turned to AUTO mode while the power switch is in ON mode, the wipers will operate once to show that AUTO mode is activated.
- If the temperature of the raindrop sensor is 194°F (90°C) or higher, or 14°F (-10°C) or lower, automatic operation may not occur. In this case, operate the wipers in any mode other than AUTO mode.

If no windshield washer fluid sprays

Check that the washer nozzles are not blocked if there is washer fluid in the windshield washer fluid reservoir.

CAUTION

Caution regarding the use of windshield wipers in AUTO mode (vehicles with rain-sensing windshield wipers)

The windshield wipers may operate unexpectedly if the sensor is touched or the windshield is subject to vibration in AUTO mode. Take care that your fingers or anything else do not become caught in the windshield wipers.

Caution regarding the use of washer fluid

When it is cold, do not use the washer fluid until the windshield becomes warm. The fluid may freeze on the windshield and cause low visibility. This may lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

NOTICE When the windshield is dry Do not use the wipers, as they may damage the windshield. When there is no washer fluid spray from the nozzle

Damage to the washer fluid pump may be caused if the lever is pulled toward you and held continually.

When a nozzle becomes blocked

In this case, contact your Toyota dealer. Do not try to clear it with a pin or other object. The nozzle will be damaged.

Opening the fuel tank cap

Perform the following steps to open the fuel tank cap:

Before refueling the vehicle

- Close all the doors and windows, and turn the power switch off.
- Confirm the type of fuel.

Fuel types

Use unleaded gasoline (Octane rating 87 [Research Octane Number 91] or higher)

207



Refueling

Do not spill fuel during refueling.

Doing so may damage the vehicle, such as causing the emission control system to operate abnormally or damaging fuel system components or the vehicle's painted surface.

Opening the fuel tank cap

1 With the doors unlocked, press the center of the rear edge of the fuel filler door.

Push until you hear a click and take your hand away to slightly open the fuel filler door. Then open the door fully by hand.

2 Turn the fuel tank cap slowly to open.

3 Hang the fuel tank cap on the back of the fuel filler door.



CTY44AX003

■ If the fuel filler door cannot be opened

Remove the cover inside the trunk and pull the lever to unlock the fuel filler door. Then press the center of the rear edge of the fuel filler door to open it.



210 4-4. Refueling

Closing the fuel tank cap

- 1 After refueling, turn the fuel tank cap until you hear a click. Once the cap is released, it will turn slightly in the opposite direction.
- 2 Close the fuel filler door, and press the center of the rear edge of the fuel filler door until you hear a click.

When you lock the doors, the fuel filler door will lock also.





Fuel filler door lock condition

The fuel filler door may not be locked even when the vehicle's doors are locked in the following conditions:

- When operating the door lock button inside the vehicle
- When the automatic door locking system is operated (\rightarrow P. 131)
- When the fuel filler door is closed after the vehicle's doors are locked

When replacing the fuel tank cap

Do not use anything but a genuine Toyota fuel tank cap designed for your vehicle. Doing so may cause a fire or other incident which may result in death or serious injury.

Cruise control*

Summary of functions

Use the cruise control to maintain a set speed without depressing the accelerator pedal.

- 1 Display
- (2) Indicators
- ③ Set speed
- (4) Cruise control switch



Setting the vehicle speed

1 Press the "ON/OFF" button to activate the cruise control.

Cruise control indicator will be displayed.

Press the button again to deactivate the cruise control.

- 2 Accelerate or decelerate the vehicle to the desired speed, and push the lever down to set the speed.
 - "SET" indicator will be displayed.

The vehicle speed at the moment the lever is released becomes the set speed.





*: If equipped

211

Driving

Adjusting the set speed

To change the set speed, operate the lever until the desired set speed is obtained.

- (1) Increases the speed
- (2) Decreases the speed

Fine adjustment: Momentarily move the lever in the desired direction.

Large adjustment: Hold the lever in the desired direction.



The set speed will be increased or decreased as follows:

• When the set speed is shown in "MPH"

Fine adjustment: By approximately 1 mph (1.6 km/h) each time the lever is operated.

Large adjustment: The set speed can be increased or decreased continually until the lever is released.

When the set speed is shown in "km/h"

Fine adjustment: By approximately 0.6 mph (1 km/h) each time the lever is operated

Large adjustment: The set speed can be increased or decreased continually until the lever is released.

Canceling and resuming the constant speed control

(1) Pulling the lever toward you cancels the constant speed control.

The speed setting is also canceled when the brakes are applied.

(2) Pushing the lever up resumes the constant speed control.

Resuming is available when the vehicle speed is more than approximately 25 mph (40 km/h).



Cruise control can be set when

• The shift lever is in D or range 4 or higher of S has been selected.

• Vehicle speed is above approximately 25 mph (40 km/h).

Accelerating after setting the vehicle speed

- The vehicle can be accelerated normally. After acceleration, the set speed resumes.
- Even without canceling the cruise control, the set speed can be increased by first accelerating the vehicle to the desired speed and then pushing the lever down to set the new speed.

Automatic cruise control cancelation

Cruise control will stop maintaining the vehicle speed in any of the following situations.

 Actual vehicle speed falls more than approximately 10 mph (16 km/h) below the preset vehicle speed.

At this time, the memorized set speed is not retained.

- Actual vehicle speed is below approximately 25 mph (40 km/h).
- VSC is activated.
- If the warning message for the cruise control is shown on the multiinformation display

Press the "ON/OFF" button once to deactivate the system, and then press the button again to reactivate the system.

If the cruise control speed cannot be set or if the cruise control cancels immediately after being activated, there may be a malfunction in the cruise control system. Have the vehicle inspected by your Toyota dealer. Driving

214 4-5. Using the driving support systems

To avoid operating the cruise control by mistake	
Switch the cruise control off using the "ON/OFF" button when not in use.	
Situations unsuitable for cruise control	
Do not use cruise control in any of the following situations. Doing so may result in loss of control and could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.	
In heavy traffic	
On roads with sharp bends	
On winding roads	
On slippery roads, such as those covered with rain, ice or snow	
 On steep hills Vehicle speed may exceed the set speed when driving down a steep hill. 	
During emergency towing	

Dynamic radar cruise control*

Summary of functions

Dynamic radar cruise control supplements conventional cruise control with a vehicle-to-vehicle distance control. In vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the vehicle automatically accelerates or decelerates in order to maintain a set following distance from vehicles ahead.

- Vehicle-to-vehicle distance button
- 2 Display
- ③ Indicators
- ④ Set speed
- $(\underline{5})$ Cruise control switch



. ____

Driving

*: If equipped

Setting the vehicle speed (vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)

1 Press the "ON/OFF" button to activate the cruise control.

Radar cruise control indicator will be displayed.

Press the button again to deactivate the cruise control.

2 Accelerate or decelerate the vehicle to the desired speed, and push the lever down to set the speed.

"SET" indicator will be displayed.

The vehicle speed at the moment the lever is released becomes the set speed.



CTY45AX102
Adjusting the set speed

To change the set speed, operate the lever until the desired set speed is displayed.

- (1) Increases the speed
- (2) Decreases the speed

Fine adjustment: Momentarily move the lever in the desired direction.

Large adjustment: Hold the lever in the desired direction.

CTY45AX025

In the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the set speed will be increased or decreased as follows:

· When the set speed is shown in "MPH"

Fine adjustment: By approximately 1 mph (1.6 km/h) each time the lever is operated

Large adjustment: By approximately 5 mph (8 km/h) for each 0.75 seconds the lever is held

· When the set speed is shown in "km/h"

Fine adjustment: By approximately 0.6 mph (1 km/h) each time the lever is operated

Large adjustment: By approximately 3.1 mph (5 km/h) for each 0.75 seconds the lever is held

In the constant speed control mode (\rightarrow P. 222), the set speed will be increased or decreased as follows:

Fine adjustment: By approximately 1 mph (1.6 km/h) each time the lever is operated

Large adjustment: The set speed can be increased or decreased continually until the lever is released.

Changing the vehicle-to-vehicle distance

Pressing the button changes the vehicle-to-vehicle distance as follows:

- 1 Long
- (2) Medium
- ③ Short

The vehicle-to-vehicle distance is set automatically to long mode when the power switch is turned to ON mode.

If a vehicle is running ahead of you, the preceding vehicle mark will also be displayed.



Vehicle-to-vehicle distance settings

Select a distance from the table below. Note that the distances shown correspond to a vehicle speed of 50 mph (80 km/h). Vehicle-to-vehicle distance increases/decreases in accordance with vehicle speed.

Distance options	Vehicle-to-vehicle distance	
Long	Approximately 160 ft. (50 m)	
Medium	Approximately 130 ft. (40 m)	
Short	Approximately 100 ft. (30 m)	

Canceling and resuming the speed control

- Pulling the lever toward you cancels the cruise control.
 The speed setting is also canceled when the brakes are applied.
- (2) Pushing the lever up resumes the cruise control and returns vehicle speed to the set speed. Resuming is available when the vehicle speed is more than approximately 25 mph (40 km/h).



Driving

Driving in vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode

This mode employs a radar sensor to detect the presence of vehicles up to approximately 400 ft. (120 m) ahead, determines the current vehicle-to-vehicle following distance, and operates to maintain a suitable following distance from the vehicle ahead.

Note that vehicle-to-vehicle distance will close in when traveling on long downhill slopes.



(1) Example of constant speed cruising When there are no vehicles ahead

The vehicle travels at the speed set by the driver. The desired vehicle-to-vehicle distance can also be set by operating the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control.

(2) Example of deceleration cruising

When the vehicle ahead is driving slower than the set speed

When a vehicle is detected running ahead of you, the system automatically decelerates your vehicle. When a greater reduction in vehicle speed is necessary, the system applies the brakes. A warning tone warns you when the system cannot decelerate sufficiently to prevent your vehicle from closing in on the vehicle ahead.

③ Example of follow-up cruising

When following a vehicle driving slower than the set speed

The system continues follow-up cruising while adjusting for changes in the speed of the vehicle ahead in order to maintain the vehicle-to-vehicle distance set by the driver.

(4) Example of acceleration

When there are no longer any vehicles ahead driving slower than the set speed

The system accelerates until the set speed is reached. The system then returns to constant speed cruising.

Approach warning

When your vehicle is too close to a vehicle ahead, and sufficient automatic deceleration via the cruise control is not possible, the display will flash and the buzzer will sound to alert the driver. An example of this would be if another driver cuts in front of you while you are following a vehicle. Apply the brakes to ensure an appropriate vehicle-tovehicle distance.

Driving

Warnings may not occur when

In the following instances, there is a possibility that the warnings will not occur:

- When the speed of the vehicle ahead matches or exceeds your vehicle speed
- When the vehicle ahead is traveling at an extremely slow speed
- Immediately after the cruise control speed was set
- At the instant the accelerator is applied

222 4-5. Using the driving support systems

Selecting conventional constant speed control mode

Constant speed control mode differs from vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode. When constant speed control mode is selected, your vehicle will maintain a set speed regardless of whether or not there are other vehicles in the lane ahead.

1 Press the "ON/OFF" button to activate the cruise control.

Press the button again to deactivate the cruise control.

 Switch to constant speed control mode.

(Push the lever forward and hold for approximately one second.)

Constant speed control mode indicator will come on.

When in constant speed control mode, to return to vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, push the lever forward again and hold for approximately 1 second.

After the desired speed has been set, it is not possible to return to vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode.

If the power switch is turned off and then turned to ON mode again, the vehicle will automatically return to vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode.

Adjusting the speed setting: \rightarrow P. 212

Canceling and resuming the speed setting: \rightarrow P. 212



Dynamic radar cruise control can be set when

• The shift lever is in D or range 4 or higher of S has been selected.

Vehicle speed is above approximately 30 mph (50 km/h).

Accelerating after setting the vehicle speed

The vehicle can accelerate normally. After acceleration, the set speed resumes. However, during vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the vehicle speed may decrease below the set speed in order to maintain the distance to the vehicle ahead.

Automatic cancelation of vehicle-to-vehicle distance control

Vehicle-to-vehicle distance control driving is automatically canceled in the following situations:

Actual vehicle speed falls below approximately 25 mph (40 km/h).

- VSC is activated.
- The sensor cannot operate correctly because it is covered in some way.
- The windshield wipers are operating at high speed (when the wipers are in AUTO mode [rain-sensing windshield wipers] or the high speed wiper operation).

If vehicle-to-vehicle distance control driving is automatically canceled for any other reason, there may be a malfunction in the system. Contact your Toyota dealer.

Automatic cancelation of constant speed control

The cruise control will stop maintaining the vehicle speed in the following situations:

 Actual vehicle speed is more than approximately 10 mph (16 km/h) below the set vehicle speed.

At this time, the memorized set speed is not retained.

Vehicle speed falls below approximately 25 mph (40 km/h).

VSC is activated.

Radar sensor and grille cover

Always keep the sensor and grille cover clean to ensure that the vehicle-tovehicle distance control operates properly. (Some obstructions, such as snow, ice and plastic objects, cannot be detected by the obstruction sensor.) Dynamic radar cruise control is canceled if an obstruction is detected.

- 1 Grille cover
- 2 Radar sensor



Warning messages and buzzers for dynamic radar cruise control

Warning messages and buzzers are used to indicate a system malfunction or to inform the driver of the need for caution while driving. The following actions may solve the problem.

 When a message indicating to perform system check is displayed: Press the "ON-OFF" button once to deactivate the system, and then press the button again to reactivate the system.

- When a message indicating to clean the radar sensor is displayed: Dirt, ice, etc. is on the radar sensor surface. Clean the sensor.
- When a message indicating that the cruise control is not available is displayed: If the wipers are operating at high speed (including when the wiper switch is in the AUTO position), the radar cruise control is not available. Use the cruise control when it is possible to drive without operating the wipers at high speed.

If the warning message remains on even after the above actions have been performed, the system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by your Toyota dealer.

Certification

FCC ID: HYQDNMWR004

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC WARNING

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Radiofrequency radiation exposure Information:

This equipment complies with FCC radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment.

This equipment should be installed and operated with minimum distance of 20 cm between the radiator (antenna) and your body.

This transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

Driving

A CAUTION

Before using dynamic radar cruise control

Do not overly rely on vehicle-to-vehicle distance control.

Be aware of the set speed. If automatic deceleration/acceleration is not appropriate, adjust the vehicle speed, as well as the distance between your vehicle and vehicles ahead by applying the brakes etc.

Cautions regarding the driving assist systems

Observe the following precautions.

Failure to do so may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

Assisting the driver to measure following distance

The dynamic radar cruise control is only intended to help the driver in determining the following distance between the driver's own vehicle and a designated vehicle traveling ahead. It is not a mechanism that allows careless or inattentive driving, and it is not a system that can assist the driver in low-visibility conditions. It is still necessary for driver to pay close attention to the vehicle's surroundings.

Assisting the driver to judge proper following distance

The dynamic radar cruise control determines whether the following distance between the driver's own vehicle and a designated vehicle traveling ahead is appropriate or not. It is not capable of making any other type of judgement. Therefore, it is absolutely necessary for the driver to remain vigilant and to determine whether or not there is a possibility of danger in any given situation.

Assisting the driver to operate the vehicle The dynamic radar cruise control has no capability to prevent or avoid a collision with a vehicle traveling ahead. Therefore, if there is ever any danger, the driver must take immediate and direct control of the vehicle and act appropriately in order to ensure the safety of all involved.

227



AVALON_HV_U (OM41457U)

228 4-5. Using the driving support systems

CAUTION When the sensor may not be correctly detecting the vehicle ahead Apply the brakes as necessary when any of the following types of vehicles are in front of you. As the sensor may not be able to correctly detect these types of vehicles, the approach warning (\rightarrow P. 221) will not be activated, and a fatal or serious accident may result. Vehicles that cut in suddenly Vehicles traveling at low speeds Vehicles that are not moving • Vehicles with small rear ends (trailers with no load on board etc.) Motorcycles traveling in the same lane Conditions under which the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control may not function correctly Apply the brakes as necessary in the following conditions as the radar sensor may not be able to correctly detect vehicles ahead, and a fatal or serious accident may result: • When water or snow thrown up by the surrounding vehicles hinders the functioning of the sensor • When your vehicle is pointing upwards (caused by a heavy load in the trunk etc.)

- When the road curves or when the lanes are narrow
- When steering wheel operation or your position in the lane is unstable
- When the vehicle ahead of you decelerates suddenly

A CAUTION Handling the radar sensor Observe the following to ensure the cruise control system can function effectively. Otherwise, the system may not function correctly and could result in an accident. • Keep the sensor and grille cover clean at all times. Clean the sensor and grille cover with a soft cloth so you do not mark or damage them. • Do not subject the sensor or surrounding area to a strong impact. If the sensor moves even slightly off position, the system may malfunction. If the sensor or surrounding area is subject to a strong impact, always have the area inspected and adjusted by a Toyota dealer. Do not disassemble the sensor. Do not attach accessories or stickers to the sensor, grille cover or surrounding area. Driving • Do not modify or paint the sensor and grille cover. • Do not replace them with non-genuine parts.

229

Driving mode select switch

The driving modes can be selected to suit driving condition.



- (1) EV drive mode \rightarrow P. 183
- (2) Eco drive mode

Use Eco drive mode to help achieve low fuel consumption during trips that involve frequent accelerating.

When the "ECO" switch is pressed, the "ECO MODE" indicator comes on in the instrument cluster and message is shown on the multi-information display. To turn off Eco drive mode, press the "ECO" switch again.

③ Sport mode

Assists acceleration response by controlling the hybrid system. Suitable for when precise handling is desirable, for example when driving on mountain roads.

When the "SPORT" switch is pressed, the "SPORT" indicator comes on in the instrument cluster. To turn off the sport mode, press the "SPORT" switch again.

Operation of the air conditioning system in Eco drive mode

Eco drive mode controls the heating/cooling operations and fan speed of the air conditioning system to enhance fuel efficiency (\rightarrow P. 262). To improve air conditioning performance, adjust the fan speed or turn off Eco drive mode.

Sport mode automatic deactivation

Sport mode is automatically deactivated if the power switch is turned off after driving in sport mode.

Driving assist systems

To help enhance driving safety and performance, the following systems operate automatically in response to various driving situations. Be aware, however, that these systems are supplementary and should not be relied upon too heavily when operating the vehicle.

ABS (Anti-lock Brake System)

Helps to prevent wheel lock when the brakes are applied suddenly, or if the brakes are applied while driving on a slippery road surface

Brake assist

Generates an increased level of braking force after the brake pedal is depressed when the system detects a panic stop situation

VSC (Vehicle Stability Control)

Helps the driver to control skidding when swerving suddenly or turning on slippery road surfaces

Enhanced VSC (Enhanced Vehicle Stability Control)

Provides cooperative control of the ABS, TRAC, VSC and EPS. Helps to maintain directional stability when swerving on slippery road surfaces by controlling steering performance.

TRAC (Traction Control)

Helps to maintain drive power and prevent the drive wheels from spinning when starting the vehicle or accelerating on slippery roads

Hill-start assist control

→P. 237

EPS (Electric Power Steering)

Employs an electric motor to reduce the amount of effort needed to turn the steering wheel

PCS (Pre-Collision System) (if equipped)

→P. 239

→P. 245

When the TRAC/VSC/ABS/hill-start assist control systems are operating

The slip indicator light will flash while the TRAC/VSC/ABS/hillstart assist control systems are operating.



Disabling the TRAC system

If the vehicle gets stuck in mud, dirt or snow, the TRAC systems may reduce power from the hybrid system to the wheels. Pressing the switch to turn the system off may make it easier for you to rock the vehicle in order to free it. Driving

To turn the TRAC system off, quickly press and release the switch.

The "TRAC OFF" indicator light should come on and message will be shown on the multi-information display.

Press the switch again to turn the system back on.



Turning off both TRAC/VSC systems

To turn the TRAC/VSC systems off, press and hold the switch for more than 3 seconds while the vehicle is stopped.

The VSC OFF and "TRAC OFF" indicator lights will come on and the message will be shown on the multi-information display.

Press the switch again to turn the systems back on.

When the message is displayed on the multi-information display showing that TRAC has been disabled and "TRAC OFF" indicator light comes on even if the TRAC/VSC OFF switch has not been pressed

TRAC and hill-start assist control cannot be operated. Contact your Toyota dealer.

Sounds and vibrations caused by the ABS, brake assist, TRAC, VSC systems

A sound may be heard from the engine compartment when the brake pedal is depressed repeatedly, when the hybrid system is started or just after the vehicle begins to move. This sound does not indicate that a malfunction has occurred in any of these systems.

- Any of the following conditions may occur when the above systems are operating. None of these indicates that a malfunction has occurred.
 - Vibrations may be felt through the vehicle body and steering.
 - A motor sound may be heard after the vehicle comes to a stop.

EPS operation sound

When the steering wheel is operated, a motor sound (whirring sound) may be heard. This does not indicate a malfunction.

Automatic reactivation of TRAC and VSC systems

After turning the TRAC and VSC systems off, the systems will be automatically re-enabled in the following situations:

- When the power switch is turned off
- If only the TRAC system is turned off, the TRAC will turn on when vehicle speed increases

If both the TRAC and VSC systems are turned off, automatic re-enabling will not occur when vehicle speed increases.

Reduced effectiveness of the EPS system

The effectiveness of the EPS system is reduced to prevent the system from overheating when there is frequent steering input over an extended period of time. The steering wheel may feel heavy as a result. Should this occur, refrain from excessive steering input or stop the vehicle and turn the hybrid system off. The effectiveness of the EPS system will be restored after a short while.

CAUTION The ABS does not operate effectively when The limits of tire gripping performance have been exceeded (such as excessively worn tires on a snow covered road). The vehicle hydroplanes while driving at high speed on wet or slick roads. Stopping distance when the ABS is operating may exceed that of normal conditions The ABS is not designed to shorten the vehicle's stopping distance. Always maintain a safe distance from the vehicle in front of you, especially in the following situations: When driving on dirt, gravel or snow-covered roads When driving with tire chains When driving over bumps in the road When driving over roads with potholes or uneven surfaces TRAC may not operate effectively when Driving Directional control and power may not be achievable while driving on slippery road surfaces, even if the TRAC system is operating. Drive the vehicle carefully in conditions where stability and power may be lost. When the VSC is activated The slip indicator light flashes. Always drive carefully. Reckless driving may cause an accident. Exercise particular care when the indicator light flashes. When the TRAC/VSC systems are turned off Be especially careful and drive at a speed appropriate to the road conditions. As these are the systems to help ensure vehicle stability and driving force, do not turn the TRAC/VSC systems off unless necessary.

235

236 4-5. Using the driving support systems

A CAUTION

Replacing tires

Make sure that all tires are of the specified size, brand, tread pattern and total load capacity. In addition, make sure that the tires are inflated to the recommended tire inflation pressure level.

The ABS, TRAC and VSC systems will not function correctly if different tires are installed on the vehicle.

Contact your Toyota dealer for further information when replacing tires or wheels.

Handling of tires and the suspension

Using tires with any kind of problem or modifying the suspension will affect the driving assist systems, and may cause a system to malfunction.

Hill-start assist control

Assists with starting off and temporarily maintains braking power even if the foot is removed from the brake pedal when starting off on an incline or a slippery slope.

To engage hill-start assist control, further depress the brake pedal when the vehicle is stopped completely.

A buzzer will sound once to indicate the system is activated. The slip indicator will also start flashing.



Hill-start assist control operating conditions

• The system operates in the following situations:

- The shift lever is in a position other than P.
- The parking brake is not applied.
- The accelerator pedal is not depressed.
- Hill-start assist control cannot be operated while the slip indicator light is illuminated.

Hill-start assist control

- While hill-start assist control is operating, the brakes remain automatically applied after the driver releases the brake pedal. The stop lights and the high mounted stoplight turn on.
- Hill-start assist control operates for about 2 seconds after the brake pedal is released.
- If the slip indicator does not flash and the buzzer does not sound when the brake pedal is further depressed, slightly reduce the pressure on the brake pedal (do not allow the vehicle to roll backward) and then firmly depress it again. If the system still does not operate, check that the operating conditions explained above have been met.

Driving

237

Hill-start assist control buzzer

• When hill-start assist control is activated, the buzzer will sound once.

- In the following situations, hill-start assist control will be canceled and the buzzer will sound twice.
 - No attempt is made to drive the vehicle within approximately 2 seconds of releasing the brake pedal.
 - The shift lever is moved to P.
 - The parking brake is applied.
 - The brake pedal is depressed again.
 - The brake pedal has been depressed for more than approximately 3 minutes.

If the slip indicator comes on

It may indicate a malfunction in the system. Contact your Toyota dealer.

A CAUTION

Hill-start assist control

- Do not overly rely on hill-start assist control. Hill-start assist control may not operate effectively on extremely steep inclines and roads covered with ice.
- Unlike the parking brake, hill-start assist control is not intended to hold the vehicle stationary for an extended period of time. Do not attempt to use hill-start assist control to hold the vehicle on an incline for an extended period of time, as doing so may lead to an accident.

PCS (Pre-Collision System)*

When the radar sensor detects possibility of a frontal collision, the pre-collision system such as the brakes and seat belts are automatically engaged to lessen impact as well as vehicle damage.

The pre-collision system can be turned on and off as necessary by operating the switch. (\rightarrow P. 240)

Pre-collision seat belts (front seats only)

If the pre-collision sensor detects that a collision is unavoidable, the pre-collision system will retract the seat belt before the collision occurs.

The same will happen if the driver makes an emergency braking or loses control of the vehicle. (\rightarrow P. 31)

However, when the VSC system is disabled, the system will not operate in the event of skidding.

Pre-collision brake assist

When there is a high possibility of a frontal collision, the system applies greater braking force in relation to how strongly the brake pedal is depressed.

Pre-collision braking

When there is a high possibility of a frontal collision, the system warns the driver using a warning light, warning display and buzzer. If the system determines that a collision is unavoidable, the brakes are automatically applied to reduce the collision speed.

Disabling pre-collision system

- (1) Enabled
- (2) Disabled

The "PCS" warning light turns on when pre-collision system is disabled.



Radar sensor

The radar sensor detects vehicles or other obstacles on or near the road ahead and determines whether a collision is imminent based on the position, speed, and heading of the obstacles.



The pre-collision system is operational when

The pre-collision system off switch is not pressed and the following conditions are met:

• Pre-collision seat belts (operating conditions A):

- Vehicle speed is greater than about 19 mph (30 km/h).
- The system detects sudden braking or skidding.

• The front occupants are wearing a seat belt.

Pre-collision seat belts (operating conditions B):

- Vehicle speed is greater than about 4 mph (5 km/h).
- The speed at which your vehicle is approaching the obstacle or oncoming vehicle is greater than about 19 mph (30 km/h).
- · The front occupants are wearing a seat belt.

Pre-collision brake assist:

- Vehicle speed is greater than about 19 mph (30 km/h).
- The speed at which your vehicle is approaching the obstacle or the vehicle running ahead of you is greater than about 19 mph (30 km/h).
- The brake pedal is depressed.
- Pre-collision braking:
 - Vehicle speed is greater than about 10 mph (15 km/h).
 - The speed at which your vehicle is approaching the obstacle or the vehicle running ahead of you is greater than about 10 mph (15 km/h).
- Conditions that may trigger the system even if there is no possibility of a collision
 - When there is an object by the roadside at the entrance to a curve
 - When passing an oncoming vehicle on a curve
 - When driving over a narrow iron bridge
 - When there is a metal object on the road surface
 - When driving on an uneven road surface
 - When passing an oncoming vehicle on a left-turn
 - When your vehicle rapidly closes on the vehicle in front
 - When a grade separation/interchange, sign, billboard, or other structure appears to be directly in the vehicle's line of travel
 - When the steep angle of the road causes a metal object located beneath the road surface to be seen ahead of the vehicle
 - When an extreme change in vehicle height occurs
 - When the axis of the radar is out of adjustment
 - When passing through certain toll gates
 - When passing through an overpass

Driving

When the system is activated in the situations described above, there is also a possibility that the seat belts will retract quickly and the brakes will be applied with a force greater than normal. When the seat belt is locked in the retracted position, stop the vehicle in a safe place, release the seat belt and refasten it.

Obstacles not detected

The sensor cannot detect plastic obstacles such as traffic cones. There may also be occasions when the sensor cannot detect pedestrians, animals, bicycles, motorcycles, trees, or snowdrifts.

Situations in which the pre-collision system does not function properly

The system may not function effectively in situations such as the following:

• On roads with sharp bends or uneven surfaces

- If a vehicle suddenly moves in front of your vehicle, such as at an intersection
- If a vehicle suddenly cuts in front of your vehicle, such as when overtaking
- In inclement weather such as heavy rain, fog, snow or sand storms
- When your vehicle is skidding such as the VSC system off

When your vehicle is steeply inclined

• When the axis of the radar is out of adjustment

Automatic cancelation of the pre-collision system

When a malfunction occurs due to sensor contamination, etc. that results in the sensors being unable to detect obstacles, the pre-collision system will be automatically disabled. In this case, the system will not activate even if there is a collision possibility.

When there is a malfunction in the system

"PCS" warning light will flash and warning messages will be displayed. (\rightarrow P. 406) Have the vehicle inspected by your Toyota dealer immediately.

Certification

FCC ID: HYQDNMWR004

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC WARNING

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Radiofrequency radiation exposure Information:

This equipment complies with FCC radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment.

This equipment should be installed and operated with minimum distance of 20 cm between the radiator (antenna) and your body.

This transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

A CAUTION

Limitations of the pre-collision system

Do not overly rely on the pre-collision system. Always drive safely, taking care to observe your surroundings and checking for any obstacles or other road hazards.

Failure to do so may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

When the sensor may not be correctly detecting the vehicle ahead

Apply the brakes as necessary in any of the following situations.

- When water or snow thrown up by the surrounding vehicles hinders the functioning of the sensor
- When your vehicle is pointing upwards (caused by a heavy load in the luggage compartment etc.)
- Vehicles that cut in suddenly
- Vehicles with small rear ends (trailers with no load on board etc.)
- Motorcycles traveling in the same lane

Handling the radar sensor

Observe the following to ensure the pre-collision system can function effectively.

Otherwise, the system may not function correctly and could result in an accident.

Keep the sensor and grille cover clean at all times.

Clean the sensor and grille cover with a soft cloth so you do not mark or damage them.

Do not subject the sensor or surrounding area to a strong impact.

If the sensor moves even slightly off position, the system may become inaccurate or malfunction. If the sensor or surrounding area is subject to a strong impact, always have the area inspected and adjusted by your Toyota dealer.

- Do not disassemble the sensor.
- Do not attach accessories or stickers to the sensor, grille cover or surrounding area.
- Do not modify or paint the sensor and grille cover.
- Do not replace them with non-genuine parts.

243

Cautions regarding the assist contents of the system

By means of alarms and brake control, the pre-collision system is intended to assist the driver in avoiding collisions through the process of LOOK-JUDGE-ACT. There are limits to the degree of assistance the system can provide, so please keep in mind the following important points.

• Assisting the driver in watching the road The pre-collision system is only able to detect obstacles directly in front of the vehicle, and only within a limited range. It is not a mechanism that allows careless or inattentive driving, and it is not a system that can assist the driver in low-visibility conditions. It is still necessary for the driver to pay close attention to the vehicle's surroundings.

Assisting the driver in making correct judgment

When attempting to estimate the likelihood of a collision, the only data available to the pre-collision system is that from obstacles it has detected directly in front of the vehicle. Therefore, it is absolutely necessary for the driver to remain vigilant and to determine whether or not there is a possibility of collision in any given situation.

Assisting the driver in taking action

The pre-collision system's braking assist feature is designed to help reduce the severity of a collision, and so only acts when the system has judged that a collision is unavoidable. This system by itself is not capable of automatically avoiding a collision or bringing the vehicle to a stop safely. For this reason, when encountering a dangerous situation the driver must take direct and immediate action in order to ensure the safety of all involved.

BSM (Blind Spot Monitor)

Summary of the Blind Spot Monitor

The Blind Spot Monitor is a system that has 2 functions;

The Blind Spot Monitor function

Assists the driver in making the decision when changing lanes

 The Rear Cross Traffic Alert function Assists the driver when backing up

These functions use same sensors.



(1) BSM main switch

Pressing the switch turns the system on or off. When the switch is set to on, the switch's indicator illuminates. Common switch for Blind Spot Monitor function and Rear Cross Traffic Alert function.

(2) Outside rear view mirror indicator

Blind Spot Monitor function:

When a vehicle is detected in the blind spot, the outside rear view mirror indicator comes on while the turn signal lever is not operated and the outside rear view mirror indicator flashes while the turn signal lever is operated.

Rear Cross Traffic Alert function:

When a vehicle approaching from the right or left rear of the vehicle is detected, the outside rear view mirror indicators flash.

*: If equipped

③ Rear Cross Traffic Alert buzzer (Rear Cross Traffic Alert function only)

When a vehicle approaching from the right or left rear of the vehicle is detected, a buzzer sounds from behind the rear seat.

The outside rear view mirror indicators visibility

When under strong sunlight, the outside rear view mirror indicator may be difficult to see.

Rear Cross Traffic Alert buzzer hearing

Rear Cross Traffic Alert function may be difficult to hear over loud noises such as high audio volume.

When there is a malfunction in the Blind Spot Monitor system

If a system malfunction is detected due to any of the following reasons, warning messages will be displayed:

- There is a malfunction with the sensors
- The sensors have become dirty
- Clean the sensor and its surrounding area on the bumper.
- The outside temperature is extremely high or low
- The sensor voltage has become abnormal

If a message continues to be displayed, have the vehicle inspected by your Toyota dealer.

Certification for the Blind Spot Monitor system

FCC ID: OAYSRR2A

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and
- (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC WARNING

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

CAUTION

Handling the radar sensor

One Blind Spot Monitor sensor is installed inside the left and right side of the vehicle rear bumper respectively. Observe the following to ensure the Blind Spot Monitor system can function correctly.

• Keep the sensor and its surrounding area on the bumper clean at all times.



- Do not subject the sensor or surrounding area on the bumper to a strong impact. If the sensor moves even slightly off position, the system may malfunction and vehicles that enter the detection area may not be detected. If the sensor or surrounding area is subject to a strong impact, always have the area inspected by your Toyota dealer.
- Do not disassemble the sensor.
- Do not attach accessories or stickers to the sensor or surrounding area on the bumper.
- Do not modify the sensor or surrounding area on the bumper.
- Do not paint the sensor or surrounding area on the bumper.

The Blind Spot Monitor function

The Blind Spot Monitor function uses radar sensors to detect vehicles that are traveling in an adjacent lane in the area that is not reflected in the outside rear view mirror (the blind spot), and advises the driver of the vehicles existence via the outside rear view mirror indicator. Driving

The Blind Spot Monitor function detection areas

The areas that vehicles can be detected in are outlined below.

The range of the detection area extends to:

(1) Approximately 11.5 ft. (3.5 m) from the side of the vehicle

The first 1.6 ft. (0.5 m) from the side of the vehicle is not in the detection area

- (2) Approximately 9.8 ft. (3 m) from the rear bumper
- (3) Approximately 3.3 ft. (1 m) forward of the rear bumper



CAUTION

Cautions regarding the use of the system

The driver is solely responsible for safe driving. Always drive safely, taking care to observe your surroundings.

The Blind Spot Monitor function is a supplementary function which alerts the driver that a vehicle is present in the blind spot. Do not overly rely on the Blind Spot Monitor function. The function cannot judge if it is safe to change lanes, therefore over reliance could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

According to conditions, the system may not function correctly. Therefore the driver's own visual confirmation of safety is necessary.

The Blind Spot Monitor function is operational when

The BSM main switch is set to on

• Vehicle speed is greater than approximately 10 mph (16 km/h).

The Blind Spot Monitor function will detect a vehicle when

A vehicle in an adjacent lane overtakes your vehicle.

- Another vehicle enters the detection area when it changes lanes.
- Conditions under which the Blind Spot Monitor function will not detect a vehicle

The Blind Spot Monitor function is not designed to detect the following types of vehicles and/or objects:

- Small motorcycles, bicycles, pedestrians etc.*
- Vehicles traveling in the opposite direction
- Guardrails, walls, signs, parked vehicles and similar stationary objects*
- Following vehicles that are in the same lane*
- Vehicles driving 2 lanes across from your vehicle*
- *: Depending on conditions, detection of a vehicle and/or object may occur.

Conditions under which the Blind Spot Monitor function may not function correctly

- The Blind Spot Monitor function may not detect vehicles correctly in the following conditions:
 - During bad weather such as heavy rain, fog, snow etc.
 - When ice or mud etc. is attached to the rear bumper
 - When driving on a road surface that is wet due to rain, standing water etc.
 - When there is a significant difference in speed between your vehicle and the vehicle that enters the detection area
 - When a vehicle is in the detection area from a stop and remains in the detection area as your vehicle accelerates
 - When driving up or down consecutive steep inclines, such as hills, a dip in the road etc.
 - When multiple vehicles approach with only a small gap between each vehicle
 - When vehicle lanes are wide, and the vehicle in the next lane is too far away from your vehicle
 - When the vehicle that enters the detection area is traveling at about the same speed as your vehicle
 - When there is a significant difference in height between your vehicle and the vehicle that enters the detection area
 - · Directly after the BSM main switch is set to on
- Instances of the Blind Spot Monitor function unnecessarily detecting a vehicle and/or object may increase under the following conditions:
 - When there is only a short distance between your vehicle and a guardrail, wall etc.
 - When there is only a short distance between your vehicle and a following vehicle
 - When vehicle lanes are narrow and a vehicle driving 2 lanes across from your vehicle enters the detection area
 - When items such as a bicycle carrier are installed on the rear of the vehicle

The Rear Cross Traffic Alert function

The Rear Cross Traffic Alert functions when your vehicle is in reverse. It can detect other vehicles approaching from the right or left rear of the vehicle. It uses radar sensors to alert the driver of the other vehicle's existence through flashing the outside rear view mirror indicators and sounding a buzzer.



A CAUTION

Cautions regarding the use of the system

The driver is solely responsible for safe driving. Always drive safely, taking care to observe your surroundings.

The Rear Cross Traffic Alert function is only an assist and is not a replacement for careful driving. Driver must be careful when backing up, even when using Rear Cross Traffic Alert function. The driver's own visual confirmation of behind you and your vehicle is necessary and be sure there are no pedestrians, other vehicles etc. before backing up. Failure to do so could cause death or serious injury.

According to conditions, the system may not function correctly. Therefore the driver's own visual confirmation of safety is necessary.

Driving

The Rear Cross Traffic Alert function detection areas

The areas that vehicles can be detected in are outlined below.



To give the driver a more consistent time to react, the buzzer can alert for faster vehicles from farther away.

Example:

Approaching vehicle	Speed	Approximate alert distance
Fast	18 mph (28 km/h)	65 ft. (20 m)
Slow	5 mph (8 km/h)	18 ft. (5.5 m)

The Rear Cross Traffic Alert function is operational when

- The BSM main switch is set to on.
- The shift lever is in R.
- Vehicle speed is less than approximately 5 mph (8 km/h).
- Approaching vehicle speed is between approximately 5 mph (8 km/h) and 18 mph (28 km/h).
Conditions under which the Rear Cross Traffic Alert function will not detect a vehicle

The Rear Cross Traffic Alert function is not designed to detect the following types of vehicles and/or objects.

- Small motorcycles, bicycles, pedestrians etc.*
- Vehicles approaching from directly behind
- Guardrails, walls, signs, parked vehicles and similar stationary objects*
- Vehicles moving away from your vehicle
- Vehicles approaching from the parking spaces next to your vehicle*
- Vehicles backing up in the parking space next to your vehicle*
- *: Depending on conditions, detection of a vehicle and/or object may occur.
- Conditions under which the Rear Cross Traffic Alert function may not function correctly

The Rear Cross Traffic Alert function may not detect vehicles correctly in the following conditions:

- When ice or mud etc. is attached to the rear bumper
- During bad weather such as heavy rain, fog, snow etc.
- When ice or mud etc. is attached to the rear bumper
- When multiple vehicles approach continuously
- Shallow angle parking
- When a vehicle is approaching at high speed
- When parking on a steep incline, such as hills, a dip in the road etc.
- Directly after the BSM main switch is set to on
- Vehicles that the sensors cannot detect because of obstacles



Driving

Hybrid vehicle driving tips

For economical and ecological driving, pay attention to the following points:

Using Eco drive mode

When using Eco drive mode, the torque corresponding to the accelerator pedal depression amount can be generated more smoothly than it is in normal conditions. In addition, the operation of the air conditioning system (heating/cooling) will be minimized, improving the fuel economy. (\rightarrow P. 230)

Use of Hybrid System Indicator

The Eco-friendly driving is possible by keeping the Hybrid System Indicator within Eco area. (\rightarrow P. 94)

When braking the vehicle

Make sure to operate the brakes gently and in good time. A greater amount of electrical energy can be retained when slowing down.

Delays

Repeated acceleration and deceleration, as well as long waits at traffic lights, will lead to bad fuel consumption. Check traffic reports before leaving and avoid delays as much as possible. When encountering a delay, gently release the brake pedal to allow the vehicle to move forward slightly while avoiding overuse of the accelerator pedal. Doing so can help control excessive gasoline consumption.

Highway driving

Control your speed and keep at a constant speed. Also, before stopping at a toll booth or similar, allow plenty of time to release the accelerator and gently apply the brakes. A greater amount of electrical energy can be retained when slowing down.

Air conditioning

Use the air conditioning only when necessary. Doing so can help control excessive gasoline consumption.

In summer: In high temperatures, use the recirculated air mode. Doing so will help to reduce the burden on the air conditioner and reduce fuel consumption as well.

In winter: Because the gasoline engine will not automatically cut out until the gasoline engine and the interior of the vehicle are warm, it will consume fuel. Also, fuel consumption can be improved by avoiding overuse of the heater.

Checking tire inflation pressure

Make sure to check the tire inflation pressure frequently. Improper tire inflation pressure can cause poor fuel consumption.

Also, as snow tires can cause large amounts of friction, their use on dry roads can lead to poor fuel consumption. Use a tire that is appropriate for the season.

Luggage

Carrying heavy luggage can lead to poor fuel consumption. Avoid carrying unnecessary luggage. Installing a large roof rack can also cause poor fuel consumption.

Warming up before driving

Since the gasoline engine starts up and cuts out automatically when cold, warming up the engine is unnecessary. Moreover, frequently driving short distances will cause the engine to repeatedly warm up, which can lead to poor fuel consumption. Driving

Winter driving tips

Carry out the necessary preparations and inspections before driving the vehicle in winter. Always drive the vehicle in a manner appropriate to the prevailing weather conditions.

Preparation for winter

- Use fluids that are appropriate to the prevailing outside temperatures.
 - Engine oil
 - Engine/power control unit coolant
 - Washer fluid
- Have a service technician inspect the condition of the 12-volt battery.
- Have the vehicle fitted with four snow tires or purchase a set of tire chains for the front tires.

Ensure that all tires are the specified size and brand, and that chains match the size of the tires.

Before driving the vehicle

Perform the following according to the driving conditions:

- Do not try to forcibly open a window or move a wiper that is frozen.
 Pour warm water over the frozen area to melt the ice. Wipe away the water immediately to prevent it from freezing.
- To ensure proper operation of the climate control system fan, remove any snow that has accumulated on the air inlet vents in front of the windshield.
- Check for and remove any excess ice or snow that may have accumulated on the exterior lights, vehicle's roof, chassis, around the tires or on the brakes.
- Remove any snow or mud from the bottom of your shoes before getting in the vehicle.

When driving the vehicle

Accelerate the vehicle slowly, keep a safe distance between you and the vehicle ahead, and drive at a reduced speed suitable to road conditions.

Driving

When parking the vehicle

Park the vehicle and move the shift lever to P without setting the parking brake. The parking brake may freeze up, preventing it from being released. If necessary, block the wheels to prevent inadvertent sliding or creeping.

AVALON_HV_U (OM41457U)

257

Selecting tire chains

Use the correct tire chain size when mounting the tire chains. Chain size is regulated for each tire size.

Side chain:

- (1) 0.12 in. (3 mm) in diameter
- (2) 0.39 in. (10 mm) in width
- ③ 1.18 in. (30 mm) in length Cross chain:
- (4) 0.16 in. (4 mm) in diameter
- (5) 0.55 in. (14 mm) in width
- (6) 0.98 in. (25 mm) in length



Regulations on the use of tire chains

Regulations regarding the use of tire chains vary depending on location and type of road. Always check local regulations before installing chains.

Tire chain installation

Observe the following precautions when installing and removing chains:

- Install and remove tire chains in a safe location.
- Install tire chains on the front tires. Do not install tire chains on the rear tires.
- Install tire chains on front tires as tightly as possible. Retighten chains after driving 1/4 — 1/2 mile (0.5 — 1.0 km).
- Install tire chains following the instructions provided with the tire chains.

4-6. Driving tips

259

CAUTION Driving with snow tires Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of accidents. Failure to do so may result in a loss of vehicle control and cause death or serious injury. Use tires of the specified size. Maintain the recommended level of air pressure. Do not drive in excess of 75 mph (120 km/h), regardless of the type of snow tires being used. Use snow tires on all, not just some wheels. Driving with tire chains Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of accidents. Failure to do so may result in the vehicle being unable to be driven safely, and may cause death or serious injury. Do not drive in excess of the speed limit specified for the tire chains being used, or 30 mph (50 km/h), whichever is lower. Driving Avoid driving on bumpy road surfaces or over potholes. Avoid sudden acceleration, abrupt steering, sudden braking and shifting operations that cause sudden engine braking. Slow down sufficiently before entering a curve to ensure that vehicle control is maintained.

Repairing or replacing snow tires

Request repairs or replacement of snow tires from Toyota dealers or legitimate tire retailers.

This is because the removal and attachment of snow tires affects the operation of the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters.

Fitting tire chains

The tire pressure warning valves and transmitters may not function correctly when tire chains are fitted.

AVALON_HV_U (OM41457U)

Interior features

5-1. Using the air conditioning system and defogger

- Ambient lights 276

5-3.	Using the storage features
	List of storage features 277
	• Glove box 278
	Console box 279
	• Cup holders 280
	Auxiliary boxes
	Trunk features 286
5-4.	Other interior features
	Sun visors and vanity
	mirrors
	Clock 289
	Outside temperature
	display 291
	Power outlets 292
	Seat heaters/seat
	ventilators 295
	Armrest 298
	Rear sunshade 299
	Coat hooks 301
	Assist grips 302
	Garage door opener 303
	Safety Connect 310
	Compass

Automatic air conditioning system

Air outlets and fan speed are automatically adjusted according to the temperature setting.

► Front control panel (type A)



► Front control panel (type B)



AVALON_HV_U (OM41457U)

5-1. Using the air conditioning system and defogger





ທ Interior features

CTY51AX003

(1) Rear control switch

 Rear passenger's temperature control

Using the automatic air conditioning system

Using automatic operation

1 Touch <u>\</u><u>AUTO</u>.

The air conditioning system begins to operate. Air outlets and fan speed are automatically adjusted according to the temperature setting.

2 Touch \bigstar (driver's side) to increase the temperature and touch

 \checkmark (driver's side) to decrease the temperature.

The temperature for the driver's, front passenger's and rear seats (vehicles with a rear control switch) can be adjusted separately when:

- <u>SYNC</u> *∬* is pressed (the "SYNC" display disappears).
- The front passenger's side temperature control switch is touched (the front passenger's side temperature setting is shown).
- Vehicles with a rear control switch:

indicator is on and the rear passenger's temperature setting is shown).

• Vehicles with a rear control switch: 🌘 🖞 is turned (

indicator is on and the rear passenger's temperature setting is shown).

The air conditioning system switches between individual and synchro-

nized modes each time \underline{SYNC} is touched.

Vehicles with a rear control switch: The rear passenger's temperature setting switches between individual and synchronized modes each time

^{REAR} 0 is pressed.

Changing the rear seat temperature settings (vehicles with a rear control switch)

Turn (clockwise to increase the temperature and turn (

counterclockwise to decrease the temperature.

Confirming automatic operation status

During automatic operation, the operation status of fan speed, air outlet mode, outside/recirculated air mode and whether the A/C is

on or off can be confirmed on the display by touching $\int AUTO$.

The display will return to its previous state after a few seconds.

Automatic mode indicator

If the fan speed setting or air flow modes are operated, the automatic mode indicator goes off. However, automatic mode for functions other than that operated are maintained.

Adjusting the settings manually

To adjust the fan speed, touch

toward "+" to increase the fan speed or "-" to decrease the fan speed.

The fan speed can also be adjusted by touching "+" or "-" on

Touch **SOFF** to turn the fan off.



Interior features

 $\fbox{2}$ To adjust the temperature setting, touch \bigstar (driver's side) to

increase the temperature and touch \bigotimes (driver's side) to decrease the temperature.

The temperature for the driver's, front passenger's and rear seats (vehicles with a rear control switch) can be adjusted separately when:

- <u>SYNC</u> *f* is pressed (the "SYNC" display disappears).
- The front passenger's side temperature control switch is touched (the front passenger's side temperature setting is shown).
- Vehicles with a rear control switch: REAR 0 is pressed (REAR 0

indicator is on and the rear passenger's temperature setting is shown).

• Vehicles with a rear control switch: (() is turned () rear of indi-

cator is on and the rear passenger's temperature setting is shown).

The air conditioning system switches between individual and synchronized

modes each time \underline{SYNC} is touched.

Vehicles with a rear control switch: The rear passenger's temperature setting switches between individual and synchronized modes each time

crrL^{REAR} 0 is pressed.

3 To change the air outlets, press 🧭 .

The air outlets used are switched each time is pressed.

Changing the rear seat temperature settings (vehicles with a rear control switch)

→P. 265

Defogging the windshield

Press 🐨 .

The dehumidification function operates and fan speed increases. Set the outside/recirculated air mode button to the outside air mode if the recirculated air mode is used. (It may switch automatically.) To defog the windshield and the side windows early, turn the air flow and temperature up.

To return to the previous mode, press will again when the wind-shield is defogged.

Air outlets and air flow

Air flows to the upper body.



Air flows to the upper body and feet.



U

Interior features

CTY51AX015

VII

() AUTO

ŹŚ

268 5-1. Using the air conditioning system and defogger

Air flows mainly to the feet.



Air flows to the feet and the windshield defogger operates.



Switching between outside air and recirculated air modes

Press 🖾 .

The mode switches between outside air mode and recirculated air mode each time the button is pressed.

Adjusting the position of and opening and closing the air outlets

- ► Front center outlets
 - ① Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down.
 - 2 Turn the knob to open or close the vent.



Front side outlets

- 1 Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down.
- (2) Turn the knob to open or close the vent.



- Rear outlets
 - (1) Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down.
 - 2 Turn the knob to open or close the vent.



Operation of the air conditioning system in Eco drive mode

In Eco drive mode, the air conditioning system is controlled as follows to prioritize fuel efficiency:

- When the outside temperature exceeds 68°F (20°C), the air conditioning system may switch to recirculated air mode automatically. This may also reduce fuel consumption.
- \blacksquare It is possible to switch to outside air mode at any time by pressing $\hfill \hfill \hfi$
- Engine speed and compressor operation controlled to restrict heating/cooling capacity
- Fan speed restricted when automatic mode is selected
- To improve air conditioning performance, perform the following operations:
- Adjust the fan speed
- Turn off Eco drive mode

Using automatic mode

Fan speed is adjusted automatically according to the temperature setting and the ambient conditions.

Therefore, the fan may stop for a while until warm or cool air is ready to flow immediately after (AUTO) is touched.

Fogging up of the windows

- The windows will easily fog up when the humidity in the vehicle is high.
 - Turning $\underline{A^{\prime}C}$ on will dehumidify the air from the outlets and defog the wind-shield effectively.
- If you turn A/C f off, the windows may fog up more easily.
- The windows may fog up if the recirculated air mode is used.

Windshield fog detection function

When automatic mode is set, the humidity sensor (\rightarrow P. 272) detects fog on the windshield and controls the air conditioning system to prevent fog.

Outside/recirculated air mode

- When driving on dusty roads such as tunnels or in heavy traffic, set the outside/recirculated air mode to the recirculated air mode. This is effective in preventing outside air from entering the vehicle interior. During cooling operation, setting the recirculated air mode will also cool the vehicle interior effectively.
- Outside/recirculated air mode may automatically switch depending on the temperature setting, outside temperature, pressure, engine coolant temperature or inside temperature.

When the outside temperature exceeds 75°F (24°C) and the air conditioning system is on

- In order to reduce the air conditioning power consumption, the air conditioning system may switch to recirculated air mode automatically. This may also reduce fuel consumption.
- Recirculated air mode is selected as a default mode when the power switch is turned to ON mode.

When the outside temperature falls to nearly 32°F (0°C)

The dehumidification function may not operate even when $A/C \int$ is touched.

Ventilation and air conditioning odors

- To let fresh air in, set the air conditioning system to the outside air mode.
- During use, various odors from inside and outside the vehicle may enter into and accumulate in the air conditioning system. This may then cause odor to be emitted from the vents.
- To reduce potential odors from occurring:
 - It is recommended that the air conditioning system be set to outside air mode prior to turning the vehicle off.
 - The start timing of the blower may be delayed for a short period of time immediately after the air conditioning system is started in automatic mode.

Air conditioning filter

→P. 367

Handling of the air conditioning panel

The operating section of the air conditioning panel uses capacitive touch sensors. In the following cases, incorrect operation or non-response may occur.

- If the operating section is dirty or has liquid attached to it, incorrect operation or non-response may occur.
- If the operating section receives electromagnetic waves, incorrect operation or non-response may occur.
- If wearing gloves during operation, non-response may occur.
- If fingernails are used to operate the system, non-response may occur.
- If a touch pen is used to operate the system, non-response may occur.
- If the palm of your hand touches the operating section during operation, incorrect operation may occur.
- If the palm of your hand touches the operating section, incorrect operation may occur.
- If operations are performed quickly, non-response may occur.

Customization

Settings (e.g. air conditioning setting) can be changed. (Customizable features \rightarrow P. 469)

CAUTION

To prevent the windshield from fogging up

Do not use we during cool air operation in extremely humid weather. The difference between the temperature of the outside air and that of the windshield can cause the outer surface of the windshield to fog up, blocking your vision.

271

272 5-1. Using the air conditioning system and defogger

Humidity sensor

In order to detect fog on the windshield, a sensor which monitors the temperature of the windshield, the surround humidity, etc. is installed.

Follow these points to avoid damaging the sensor:

- Do not disassemble the sensor
- Do not spray the glass cleaner on the sensor or subject it to strong impacts
- Do not stick anything on the sensor

To prevent 12-volt battery discharge

Do not leave the air conditioning system on longer than necessary when the hybrid system is off.



Rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers

These features are used to defog the rear window, and to remove raindrops, dew and frost from the outside rear view mirrors.

On/off

The defoggers will automatically turn off after 15 minutes. The operation time changes according to the ambient temperature and vehicle speed.



Operating conditions

The power switch must be in the ON mode.

A CAUTION

When the outside rear view mirror defoggers are on

Do not touch the rear view mirror surfaces, as they can become very hot and burn you.

To prevent 12-volt battery discharge

Turn the defoggers off when the hybrid system is off.

Interior lights list



5-2. Using the interior lights

Personal/interior light main switch

- 1 Turns the lights on/off
- Turns the lights on/off linked to door position



Personal/interior lights

Front

Turns the light on/off



5 Interior features

Rear

Turns the light on/off

If the lights are turned on by the personal/interior light main switch, the lights cannot turn off by pressing the switch.



AVALON_HV_U (OM41457U)

275

Ambient lights (if equipped)

Each time the "MOOD" switch is pressed, the brightness level changes.



Illuminated entry system

The lights automatically turn on/off according to power switch mode, the presence of the electronic key, whether the doors are locked/unlocked, and whether the doors are opened/closed.

To prevent 12-volt battery discharge

If the personal/interior lights remain on when the power switch is turned off, the lights will go off automatically after 20 minutes.

Customization

Setting (e.g. the time elapsed before lights turn off) can be changed. (Customizable features: \rightarrow P. 469)

To prevent 12-volt battery discharge

Do not leave the lights on longer than necessary when the hybrid system is off.

5-3. Using the storage features

List of storage features



A CAUTION

Items that should not be left in the storage spaces

Do not leave glasses, lighters or spray cans in the storage spaces, as this may cause the following when cabin temperature becomes high:

- Glasses may be deformed by heat or cracked if they come into contact with other stored items.
- Lighters or spray cans may explode. If they come into contact with other stored items, the lighter may catch fire or the spray can may release gas, causing a fire hazard.

When driving or when the storage compartments are not in use Keep the lids closed.

In the event of sudden braking or sudden swerving, an accident may occur due to an occupant being struck by an open lid or the items stored inside.

277

278 5-3. Using the storage features

Glove box

- ① Open (pull up the lever)
- 2 Lock with the mechanical key
- (3) Unlock with the mechanical key



A CAUTION

Caution while driving

Keep the glove box closed. In the event of sudden braking or sudden swerving, an accident may occur due to an occupant being struck by the open glove box or the items stored inside.

5-3. Using the storage features

Console box

Lift the lid while pulling up the lever to release the lock.



When using the console box lid as an armrest

Slide the console box lid forward as needed. Slide the lid forward while pulling up the lever.



The lid can also be opened from the forwardmost position.



Tray in the console box

The tray slides forward/backward and can be removed.



Interior features

280 5-3. Using the storage features

CAUTION

Caution while driving

Keep the console box closed. In the event of sudden braking, an accident may occur due to an occupant being struck by the open console box or the items stored inside.

Cup holders

► Front



Rear (type A)
 Pull down the armrest.



 Rear (type B)
 Pull down the armrest and open the lid.



CAUTION

Items unsuitable for the cup holders

Do not place anything other than cups or aluminum cans in the cup holders. Other items may be thrown out of the holders in the event of an accident or sudden braking, causing injury. If possible, cover hot drinks to prevent burns.

When not in use (type B)

Keep the cup holders closed. In the event of sudden braking, an accident may occur due to an occupant being struck by the open cup holders or the items stored inside.

Auxiliary boxes

► Type A

Press in the button.



ω Interior features

Type B
 Push the lid.



281

- ► Type C
- Opening

Push the tray forward until it locks.

Closing

Push the tray forward to release the lock and the tray will automatically close.



When placing small items on top of the tray

The tray can be opened while small items are placed on it.





Y56AX021

When using wireless charger (if equipped)

A mobile device can be charged wirelessly on the tray.

Charging can only be performed with the power switch in ACCESSORY or ON mode and only on mobile devices with the "**d** " logo.

- Push the tray forward until it locks and press the wireless charger switch.
- ② Push the tray forward to release the lock to close the tray and place a mobile device on the tray as shown in the illustration.

An amber indicator is illuminated while charging is in progress. When charging is complete, a green indicator will also be illuminated.

Some phones, cases or cover type wireless chargers may not cause the green indicator to illuminate even though it is fully charged.

When placing the mobile device on the wireless charging surface of the tray, make sure that there are no objects in-between the mobile device and the tray. They may interfere with charging.

If the wireless charger LED indicators flash

If the wireless charging surface of the tray becomes too hot, the LED indicators will flash and charging is canceled. The LED indicators will be illuminated if the surface of the tray cools down.

If the LED indicators flash even though the surface of the tray is not hot, the wireless charger may be malfunctioning. Consult your Toyota dealer.



When charging of the wireless charger stops temporarily

If any of the following operations are performed with the electronic key present, charging may stop temporarily. Charging will start again after a while.

Locking/unlocking the doors by touching the door handle

Opening/closing the doors

Pressing the trunk opener switch

Closing the trunk lid

Starting the hybrid system

• Locking the doors by pressing the lock button on the electronic key

When the electronic key is out of the detection area

Certification for the wireless charger

▶ For vehicles sold in the U.S.A.

This device complies with Part 18 of the FCC Rules.

Toyota Motor Sales, U.S.A., Inc. 19001 S. Western Avenue Torrance, CA 90501

▶ For vehicles sold in Canada

This ISM device complies with Canadian ICES-001. Cet appareil ISM est conforme à la norme NMB-001 du Canada.

CAUTION

Caution while driving

Keep the auxiliary boxes closed. In the event of sudden braking, an accident may occur due to an occupant being struck by an open auxiliary box or the items stored inside.

Items unsuitable for storing (type B)

Do not store items heavier than 0.4 lb. (0.2 kg). Doing so may cause the auxiliary box to open and the items inside may fall out, resulting in an accident.

Caution regarding interference with electronic devices (vehicles with a wireless charger)

- People with implantable cardiac pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy-pacemakers or implantable cardioverter defibrillators should maintain a reasonable distance between themselves and the wireless charger. The radio waves may affect the operation of such devices.
- Before using the wireless charger, users of any electrical medical device other than implantable cardiac pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy-pacemakers or implantable cardioverter defibrillators should consult the manufacturer of the device for information about its operation under the influence of radio waves. Radio waves could have unexpected effects on the operation of such medical devices.
- To avoid interference with other electrical devices, turn the wireless charger off by turning off the wireless charger switch.

When using wireless charger

Avoid placing metal objects between the wireless charger and the mobile device when charging is active. Doing so may cause metal objects to become hot and could cause burns.

Inter

285

NOTICE

To prevent damaging small items

When opening the tray while small items are placed on it, make sure the items will not get caught.

To prevent damaging the tray

Do not pull down the tray to close it. Doing so may damage the tray.

When on a steep downward incline

The tray can be closed slowly. In this case, the tray can be pulled down to close it.

However, make sure the lock has been released before doing so.

Trunk features

Grocery bag hooks



Cargo net (if equipped)



5-3. Using the storage features

To prevent damage to the hooks

Do not apply too much load to the hooks.

Sun visors and vanity mirrors

Sun visors

- (1) To set the visor in the forward position, flip it down.
- (2) To set the visor in the side position, flip down, unhook, and swing it to the side.
- (3) To use the side extender, place the visor in the side position, then slide it backward.



Vanity mirrors

Open the cover to use.

The light turns on when the cover is opened.



To prevent 12-volt battery discharge

Do not leave the vanity lights on for extended periods while the hybrid system is off.
Clock

The clock can be adjusted by pressing the buttons.

- ► Type A
 - 1 Adjusts the hours

Pressing and holding the button adjusts the hours forward quickly 1 hour at a time.

(2) Adjusts the minutes

Pressing and holding the button adjusts the minutes forward quickly by 1 minute at a time. If the button is pressed and held for 5 seconds or more, the minutes move forward by 5 minutes at a time.

- at a tir ► Type B
 - (1) Adjusts the hours

Pressing and holding the button adjusts the hours forward quickly 1 hour at a time.

(2) Adjusts the minutes

Pressing and holding the button adjusts the minutes forward quickly by 1 minute at a time. If the button is pressed and held for 5 seconds or more, the minutes move forward by 5 minutes at a time.



Interior features

289

The clock is displayed when

The power switch is in ACCESSORY or ON mode.

When disconnecting and reconnecting 12-volt battery terminals

► Type A

The time display will automatically be set to 12:00 AM.

► Type B

The time display will automatically be set to 12:00.

Time display (Type B)

After pressing "H" or "M" to show the setting screen, press "H" and "M" at the same time to change between the analog and digital displays.

5-4. Other interior features

Outside temperature display

The temperature display shows temperatures within the range of -40°F (-40°C) to $122^{\circ}F$ (50°C).



► Type B



The outside temperature is displayed when

The power switch is in ON mode.

Display

In the following situations, the correct outside temperature may not be displayed, or the display may take longer than normal to change.

- When the vehicle is stopped, or moving at low speeds (less than 9 mph [15 km/h]).
- When the outside temperature has changed suddenly (at the entrance/exit of a garage, tunnel, etc.)

■When "---°F" is displayed

The system may be malfunctioning. Take your vehicle to your Toyota dealer.

Power outlets

The power outlets can be used for 12 V accessories that run on less than 10 A.

Console box





Rear armrest (if equipped)



293



The power outlets can be used when

The power switch is in ACCESSORY or ON mode.

NOTICE

To avoid damaging the power outlets

Close the power outlet lids when the power outlets are not in use. Foreign objects or liquids that enter the power outlets may cause a short circuit.

To prevent blown fuse

Do not use an accessory that uses more than 12 V 10 A.

To prevent 12-volt battery discharge

Do not use the power outlets longer than necessary when the hybrid system is off.

295

Seat heaters*/seat ventilators*

The seat heaters warm the seats and the seat ventilators maintain good airflow by blowing air through the seats.

Seat heaters/ventilators

Front seats

- Vehicles with ventilator
 - Press the knob to release it, and turn the knob to the desired temperature setting.
 - (2) OFF

Press the knob to lock it when not in use.

- (3) Ventilation
- (4) Heat



Vehicles without ventilator

Press the knob to release it, and turn the knob to the desired temperature setting.

The further you turn the knob clockwise, the warmer the seat temperature becomes. Turn the knob counterclockwise all the way to turn the system off.

Press the knob again to lock it when not in use.



*: If equipped

296 5-4. Other interior features

Rear seats

ON/OFF

The indicator illuminates when the seat heater is turned on.



The seat heaters/seat ventilators can be used when

The power switch is in ON mode.

Automatic operation of the seat ventilator for the passenger's seat

When a passenger leaves the passenger seat while the seat ventilation turns on, the seat ventilator automatically turns off. If the passenger returns to the seat, it automatically turns on again.

Operation display illumination (if equipped)

- ① Illuminates when the ventilator is operating.
- Illuminates when the front seat heater is operating.



CAUTION Burns • Use caution when seating the following persons in a seat with the seat heater on to avoid the possibility of burns: • Babies, small children, the elderly, the sick and the physically challenged · Persons with sensitive skin · Persons who are fatigued • Persons who have taken alcohol or drugs that induce sleep (sleeping drugs, cold remedies, etc.) • Do not cover the seat with anything when using the seat heater. Using the seat heater with a blanket or cushion increases the temperature of the seat and may lead to overheating. Do not use seat heater more than necessary. Doing so may cause minor burns or overheating.

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the seat heaters/seat ventilators

Do not put heavy objects that have an uneven surface on the seat and do not stick sharp objects (needles, nails, etc.) into the seat.

To prevent 12-volt battery discharge

Turn the seat heaters/seat ventilators off when the hybrid system is off.

Interior features

298 5-4. Other interior features

Armrest

Fold down the armrest for use.



To prevent damage to the armrest

Do not apply too much load on the armrest.

Rear sunshade*

The rear sunshade can be raised and lowered by pressing the switch shown below.

Extends/retracts the rear sunshade



The rear sunshade can be used when

The power switch is in ON mode.

Reverse operation feature

To ensure adequate rear visibility, the rear sunshade automatically lowers when the shift lever is shifted to R.

However, the rear sunshade is raised again if either of the following occurs:

- The button is pressed again.
- The shift lever is shifted out of R, and the vehicle reaches a speed of 9 mph (15 km/h).

If the hybrid system is turned off when the rear sunshade has been lowered due to the reverse operation feature, it will not be raised even when the hybrid system is turned on again and the vehicle reaches a speed of 9 mph (15 km/h). To raise the sunshade again, press the button.

Customization

Settings (e.g. time elapsed before the reverse operation feature activates) can be changed.

(Customizable features: \rightarrow P. 469)

299

*: If equipped

300 5-4. Other interior features

A CAUTION

When the rear sunshade is being raised or lowered

Do not place fingers or other objects in the fastener section or in the opening. They may get caught, causing injury.

To prevent 12-volt battery discharge

Do not operate the rear sunshade when the hybrid system is off.

To ensure normal operation of the sunshade

Observe the following precautions.

- Do not place excessive load on the motor or other components.
- Do not place objects where they may hinder opening and closing operations.
- Do not attach items to the rear sunshade.
- Keep the opening clean and clear of obstructions.
- Do not operate the rear sunshade continuously for long periods of time.

5-4. Other interior features

Coat hooks

The coat hooks are provided with the rear assist grips.



A CAUTION

Items that cannot be hung on the coat hook

Do not hang coat hangers or other hard or sharp objects on the hook. If the SRS curtain shield airbags deploy, these items may become projectiles, causing death or serious injury.

5

301

Interior features

302 5-4. Other interior features

Assist grips

An assist grip installed on the ceiling can be used to support your body while sitting on the seat.



A CAUTION

Assist grip

Do not use the assist grip when getting in or out of the vehicle or rising from your seat.

To prevent damage to the assist grip

Do not hang any heavy object or put a heavy load on the assist grip.

Garage door opener*

The garage door opener can be programmed to operate garage doors, gates, entry doors, door locks, home lighting systems, security systems, and other devices.

The garage door opener (HomeLink[®] Universal Transceiver) is manufactured under license from HomeLink[®].

Programming the HomeLink® (for U.S.A. owners)

The HomeLink[®] compatible transceiver in your vehicle has 3 buttons which can be programmed to operate 3 different devices. Refer to the programming method below appropriate for the device.

- (1) Indicator light
- (2) Buttons



*: If equipped

Programming the HomeLink[®]

1 Point the remote control for the device 1 to 3 in. (25 to 75 mm) from the HomeLink[®] control buttons.

Keep the indicator light on the HomeLink $^{\mbox{\tiny I\!\! B}}$ in view while programming.

2 Press and hold one of the HomeLink[®] buttons and the transmitter button. When the HomeLink[®] indicator light changes from a slow to a rapid flash, you can release both buttons.

> If the HomeLink[®] indicator light comes on but does not flash, or flashes rapidly for 2 seconds and remains lit, the HomeLink[®] button is already programmed. Use the other buttons or follow the "Reprogramming a HomeLink[®] button" instructions. $(\rightarrow P. 308)$





5-4. Other interior features

3 Test the operation of the HomeLink[®] by pressing the newly programmed button. If programming a garage door opener, check to see if the garage door opens and closes. If the garage door does not operate, see if your garage transmitter is of the Rolling Code type. Press and hold the programmed HomeLink[®] button. The garage door has the rolling code feature if the indicator light (on the HomeLink[®]) flashes rap-

> idly for 2 seconds and then remains lit. If your transmitter is the Rolling Code type, proceed to the heading "Programming a

rolling code system".



4 Repeat the steps above to program another device for each of the remaining HomeLink[®] buttons.

ation of the

305

Programming a Rolling Code system (for U.S.A. owners)

If your device is Rolling Code equipped, follow the steps under the heading "Programming the HomeLink[®]" before proceeding with the steps listed below.

Locate the training button on the ceiling mounted garage door opener motor. The exact location and color of the button may vary by brand of garage door opener.

Refer to the operation manual supplied with the garage door opener for the location of the training button.

2 Press the training button.

Following this step, you have 30 seconds in which to initiate step 3 below.

3 Press and hold the vehicle's programmed HomeLink[®] button for 2 seconds and release it. Repeat this step once again. The garage door may open.

If the garage door opens, the programming process is complete. If the door does not open, press and release the button a third time. This third press and release will complete the programming process by opening the garage door.

The ceiling mounted garage door opener motor should now recognize the HomeLink $^{\rm @}$ transceiver and operate the garage door.

4 Repeat the steps above to program another rolling code system for any of the remaining HomeLink[®] buttons.

Programming an entry gate (for U.S.A. owners)/Programming all devices in the Canadian market

1 Place your transmitter 1 to 3 in. (25 to 75 mm) away from the surface of the HomeLink[®].

Keep the indicator light on the HomeLink® in view while programming.

- **2** Press and hold the selected HomeLink[®] button.
- 3 Repeatedly press and release (cycle) the device's remote control button for two seconds each until step 4 is completed.
- 4 When the indicator light on the HomeLink[®] compatible transceiver starts to flash rapidly, release the buttons.
- 5 Test the operation of the HomeLink[®] by pressing the newly programmed button. Check to see if the gate/device operates correctly.
- 6 Repeat the steps above to program another device for each of the remaining HomeLink[®] buttons.

Programming other devices

To program other devices such as home security systems, home door locks or lighting, contact your authorized Toyota dealer for assistance.

Reprogramming a button

The individual HomeLink[®] buttons cannot be erased but can be reprogrammed. To reprogram a button, follow the "Basic programming" instructions.

Interior features

Operating the HomeLink®

Press the appropriate HomeLink[®] button. The HomeLink[®] indicator light on the HomeLink[®] transceiver should turn on.

The HomeLink $^{\ensuremath{\mathbb{R}}}$ continues to send a signal for up to 20 seconds as long as the button is pressed.

Reprogramming a HomeLink[®] button

Press and hold the desired HomeLink[®] button. After 20 seconds, the HomeLink[®] indicator light will start flashing slowly. Keep pressing the HomeLink[®] button and press and hold the transmitter button until the HomeLink[®] indicator light changes from a slow to a rapid flash. Release the buttons.

Erasing the entire HomeLink® memory (all three programs)

Press and hold down the 2 outside buttons for 10 seconds until the indicator light flashes.

If you sell your vehicle, be sure to erase the programs stored in the HomeLink $^{\textcircled{R}}$ memory.



Before programming

Install a new battery in the transmitter.

• The battery side of the transmitter must be pointed away from the HomeLink[®].

Certification for the garage door opener

FCC ID: NZLWZLHL4

NOTE:

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules.

Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC WARNING:

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

For additional programming assistance with your HomeLink[®] Universal Transceiver

Visit on the web at www.homelink.com or call 1-800-355-3515.

A CAUTION

When programming a garage door or other remote control device

The garage door may operate, so ensure people and objects are out of danger to prevent potential harm.

Conforming to federal safety standards

Do not use the HomeLink[®] Compatible Transceiver with any garage door opener or device that lacks safety stop and reverse features as required by federal safety standards.

This includes any garage door that cannot detect an obstruction object. A door or device without these features increases the risk of death or serious injury.

Safety Connect*

Safety Connect is a subscription-based telematics service that uses Global Positioning System (GPS) data and embedded cellular technology to provide safety and security features to subscribers. Safety Connect is supported by Toyota's designated response center, which operates 24 hours per day, 7 days per week.

Safety Connect service is available by subscription on select, telematics hardware-equipped vehicles.

By using the Safety Connect service, you are agreeing to be bound by the Telematics Subscription Service Agreement and its Terms and Conditions, as in effect and amended from time to time, a current copy of which is available at Toyota.com. All use of the Safety Connect service is subject to such then-applicable Terms and Conditions.

System components

- 1 Microphone
- (2) LED light indicators
- (3) "SOS" button



*: If equipped

Services

Subscribers have the following Safety Connect services available:

 Automatic Collision Notification^{*} Helps drivers receive necessary response from emergency service providers. (→P. 313)

*: U.S. Patent No. 7,508,298 B2

- Stolen Vehicle Location
 Helps drivers in the event of vehicle theft. (→P. 314)
- Emergency Assistance Button (SOS) Connects drivers to response-center support. (→P. 314)
- Enhanced Roadside Assistance Provides drivers various on-road assistance. (→P. 314)

Subscription

After you have signed the Telematics Subscription Service Agreement and are enrolled, you can begin receiving services.

A variety of subscription terms is available for purchase. Contact your Toyota dealer, call 1-800-331-4331, or push the "SOS" button in your vehicle for further subscription details.

Safety Connect Services Information

- Phone calls using the vehicles Bluetooth[®] technology will not be possible during Safety Connect.
- Safety Connect is available beginning Fall 2009 on select Toyota models. Contact with the Safety Connect response center is dependent upon the telematics device being in operative condition, cellular connection availability, and GPS satellite signal reception, which can limit the ability to reach the response center or receive emergency service support. Enrollment and Telematics Subscription Service Agreement required. A variety of subscription terms is available; charges vary by subscription term selected.
- •Automatic Collision Notification, Emergency Assistance, Stolen Vehicle Location, and Enhanced Roadside Assistance will function in the United States, including Hawaii and Alaska, and in Canada. No Safety Connect services will function outside of the United States in countries other than Canada.
- Safety Connect services are not subject to section 255 of the Telecommunications Act and the device is not TTY compatible.

Languages

The Safety Connect response center will offer support in multiple languages. The Safety Connect system will offer voice prompts in English and Spanish. Please indicate your language of choice when enrolling.

When contacting the response center

You may be unable to contact the response center if the network is busy.

Safety Connect LED light Indicators

When the power switch is turned to ON mode, the red indicator light comes on for 2 seconds then turns off. Afterward, the green indicator light comes on, indicating that the service is active.

The following indicator light patterns indicate specific system usage conditions:

- Green indicator light on = Active service
- Green indicator light flashing = Safety Connect call in process
- Red indicator light (except at vehicle start-up) = System malfunction (contact your Toyota dealer)
- No indicator light (off) = Safety Connect service not active

Safety Connect services

Automatic Collision Notification

In case of either airbag deployment or severe rear-end collision, the system is designed to automatically call the response center. The responding agent receives the vehicle's location and attempts to speak with the vehicle occupants to assess the level of emergency. If the occupants are unable to communicate, the agent automatically treats the call as an emergency, contacts the nearest emergency services provider to describe the situation, and requests that assistance be sent to the location.

Stolen Vehicle Location

If your vehicle is stolen, Safety Connect can work with local authorities to assist them in locating and recovering the vehicle. After filing a police report, call the Safety Connect response center at 1-800-331-4331 and follow the prompts for Safety Connect to initiate this service.

In addition to assisting law enforcement with recovery of a stolen vehicle, Safety-Connect-equipped vehicle location data may, under certain circumstances, be shared with third parties to locate your vehicle. Further information is available at Toyota.com.

Emergency Assistance Button ("SOS")

In the event of an emergency on the road, push the "SOS" button to reach the Safety Connect response center. The answering agent will determine your vehicle's location, assess the emergency, and dispatch the necessary assistance required.

If you accidentally press the "SOS" button, tell the response-center agent that you are not experiencing an emergency.

Enhanced Roadside Assistance

Enhanced Roadside Assistance adds GPS data to the already included warranty-based Toyota roadside service.

Subscribers can press the "SOS" button to reach a Safety Connect response-center agent, who can help with a wide range of needs, such as: towing, flat tire, fuel delivery, etc. For a description of the Enhanced Roadside Assistance services and their limitations, please see the Safety Connect Terms and Conditions, which are available at Toyota.com.

Safety information for Safety Connect

Important! Read this information before using Safety Connect.

Exposure to radio frequency signals

The Safety Connect system installed in your vehicle is a low-power radio transmitter and receiver. It receives and also sends out radio frequency (RF) signals.

In August 1996, the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) adopted RF exposure guidelines with safety levels for mobile wireless phones. Those guidelines are consistent with the safety standards previously set by the following U.S. and international standards bodies.

- ANSI (American National Standards Institute) C95.1 [1992]
- NCRP (National Council on Radiation Protection and Measurement) Report 86 [1986]
- ICNIRP (International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection) [1996]

Those standards were based on comprehensive and periodic evaluations of the relevant scientific literature. Over 120 scientists, engineers, and physicians from universities, and government health agencies and industries reviewed the available body of research to develop the ANSI Standard (C95.1).

The design of Safety Connect complies with the FCC guidelines in addition to those standards.

Certification for Safety Connect

FCC ID: O6Y-CDMRF101

FCC ID: XOECDMRF101B

FCC ID: N7NGTM2

NOTE:

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC WARNING:

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Compass*

The compass on the inside rear view mirror indicates the direction in which the vehicle is heading.

Operation

To turn the compass on or off, press the switch for more than 3 seconds.



*: If equipped

Display	Direction
N	North
NE	Northeast
E	East
SE	Southeast
S	South
SW	Southwest
W	West
NW	Northwest

Displays and directions

Calibrating the compass



The direction display deviates from the true direction determined by the earth's magnetic field. The amount of deviation varies according to the geographic position of the vehicle.

If you cross over a map boundary shown in illustration, the compass will deviate.

To obtain higher precision or perfect calibration, refer to the following.

Deviation calibration

- 1 Stop the vehicle.
- 2 Press and hold the switch.
 - A number (1 to 15) appears on the compass display.



3 Referring to the map above, press the switch to select the number of the zone you are in.

If the direction is displayed several seconds after adjustment, the calibration is complete.

Circling calibration

When "C" appears on the display, drive the vehicle at 5 mph (8 km/h) or less in a circle until a direction is displayed.

If there is not enough space to drive in a circle, drive around the block until the direction is displayed.



Conditions unfavorable to correct operation

The compass may not show the correct direction in the following conditions:

- The vehicle is stopped immediately after turning.
- The vehicle is on an inclined surface.
- The vehicle is in a place where the earth's magnetic field is subject to interference by artificial magnetic fields (underground car park/parking lot, under a steel tower, between buildings, roof car park/parking lot, near an intersection, near a large vehicle, etc.).
- The vehicle has become magnetized.
 (There is a magnet or metal object near the inside rear view mirror.)
- The 12-volt battery has been disconnected.
- A door is open.

CAUTION

While driving

Do not adjust the display. Be sure to adjust the display only when the vehicle is stopped.

When doing the circling calibration

Be sure to secure a wide space, and watch out for people and vehicles in the neighborhood. Do not violate any local traffic rules while performing circling calibration.

NOTICE

To avoid the compass malfunctions

Do not place magnets or any metal objects near the inside rear view mirror. Doing this may cause a malfunction of the compass sensor.

To ensure normal operation of the compass

- Do not perform circling calibration of the compass in a place where the earth's magnetic field is subject to interference by artificial magnetic fields.
- During calibration, do not operate electric systems (moon roof, power windows, etc.) as they may interfere with the calibration.

AVALON_HV_U (OM41457U)

Maintenance and care

Maintenance and care
Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior
Cleaning and protecting
the vehicle interior
Maintenance
Maintenance
requirements 328
General maintenance 330
Emission inspection and
maintenance (I/M)
programs
Do-it-yourself
maintenance
Do-it-yourself service
precautions 335
Hood 338
Positioning a floor jack 339
Engine compartment 341
12-volt battery 350
Tires 354
Tire inflation pressure 361
Wheels 364
Air conditioning filter 367
Electronic key battery 369
Checking and replacing
fuses 371
Light bulbs 382

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior

Perform the following to protect the vehicle and maintain it in prime condition:

- Working from top to bottom, liberally apply water to the vehicle body, wheel wells and underside of the vehicle to remove any dirt and dust.
- Wash the vehicle body using a sponge or soft cloth, such as a chamois.
- For hard-to-remove marks, use car wash soap and rinse thoroughly with water.
- Wipe away any water.
- Wax the vehicle when the waterproof coating deteriorates.

If water does not bead on a clean surface, apply wax when the vehicle body is cool.

Automatic car washes

- Fold the mirrors before washing the vehicle. Start washing from the front of the vehicle. Make sure to extend the mirrors before driving.
- Brushes used in automatic car washes may scratch the vehicle surface and harm your vehicle's paint.

High pressure car washes

- Do not allow the nozzles of the car wash to come within close proximity of the windows.
- Before using the car wash, check that the fuel filler door on your vehicle is closed properly.

When using a car wash

If the door handle becomes wet while the electronic key is within the effective range, the door may lock and unlock repeatedly. In that case, follow the following correction procedures to wash the vehicle:

- Place the key in a position 6 ft. (2 m) or more separate from the vehicle while the vehicle is being washed. (Take care to ensure that the key is not stolen.)
- Set the electronic key to battery-saving mode to disable the smart key system. (→P. 119)

Aluminum wheels

 Remove any dirt immediately by using a neutral detergent. Do not use hard brushes or abrasive cleaners. Do not use strong or harsh chemical cleaners.

Use the same mild detergent and wax as used on the paint.

- Do not use detergent on the wheels when they are hot, for example after driving for long distance in the hot weather.
- Wash detergent from the wheels immediately after use.

Bumpers

Do not scrub with abrasive cleaners.

When washing the vehicle

Do not apply water to the inside of the engine compartment. Doing so may cause the electrical components etc. to catch fire.

When cleaning the windshield (vehicles with rain-sensing windshield wipers)

Set the wiper switch to off.

If the wiper switch is in "AUTO", the wipers may operate unexpectedly in the following situations, and may result in hands being caught or other serious injuries and cause damage to the wiper blades.



- When the upper part of the windshield where the raindrop sensor is located is touched by hand
- When a wet rag or similar is held close to the raindrop sensor
- If something bumps against the windshield
- If you directly touch the raindrop sensor body or if something bumps into the raindrop sensor

Precautions regarding the exhaust pipes

Exhaust gases cause the exhaust pipes to become quite hot.

When washing the vehicle, be careful not to touch the pipes until they have cooled sufficiently, as touching hot exhaust pipes can cause burns.

Precaution regarding the Blind Spot Monitor (if equipped)

If the paint of the rear bumper is chipped or scratched, the system may malfunction. If this occurs, consult your Toyota dealer. 6

AVALON_HV_U (OM41457U)

To prevent paint deterioration and corrosion on the body and components (aluminum wheels etc.)

Wash the vehicle immediately in the following cases:

- After driving near the sea coast
- · After driving on salted roads
- · If coal tar or tree sap is present on the paint surface
- If dead insects, insect droppings or bird droppings are present on the paint surface
- After driving in an area contaminated with soot, oily smoke, mine dust, iron powder or chemical substances
- · If the vehicle becomes heavily soiled with dust or mud
- If liquids such as benzene and gasoline are spilled on the paint surface
- If the paint is chipped or scratched, have it repaired immediately.
- To prevent the wheels from corroding, remove any dirt and store in a place with low humidity when storing the wheels.

Cleaning the exterior lights

- Wash carefully. Do not use organic substances or scrub with a hard brush. This may damage the surfaces of the lights.
- Do not apply wax to the surfaces of the lights.
 Wax may cause damage to the lenses.

To prevent damage to the windshield wiper arms

When lifting the wiper arms away from the windshield, pull the driver side wiper arm upward first, and repeat for the passenger side. When returning the wipers to their original position, do so from the passenger side first.

When using an automatic car wash (vehicles with rain-sensing windshield wipers)

Set the wiper switch to off.

If AUTO mode is selected, the wipers may operate and the wiper blades may be damaged.
Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior

The following procedures will help protect your vehicle's interior and keep it in top condition:

Protecting the vehicle interior

Remove dirt and dust using a vacuum cleaner. Wipe dirty surfaces with a cloth dampened with lukewarm water.

Cleaning the leather areas

- Remove dirt and dust using a vacuum cleaner.
- Wipe off any excess dirt and dust with a soft cloth dampened with diluted detergent.

Use a diluted water solution of approximately 5% neutral wool detergent.

- Wring out any excess water from the cloth and thoroughly wipe off all remaining traces of detergent.
- Wipe the surface with a dry, soft cloth to remove any remaining moisture. Allow the leather to dry in a shaded and ventilated area.

Cleaning the synthetic leather areas

- Remove loose dirt using a vacuum cleaner.
- Apply a mild soap solution to the synthetic leather using a sponge or soft cloth.
- Allow the solution to soak in for a few minutes. Remove the dirt and wipe off the solution with a clean, damp cloth.

Caring for leather areas

Toyota recommends cleaning the interior of the vehicle at least twice a year to maintain the quality of the vehicle's interior.

Shampooing the carpets

There are several commercial foaming-type cleaners available. Use a sponge or brush to apply the foam. Rub in overlapping circles. Do not use water. Wipe dirty surfaces and let them dry. Excellent results are obtained by keeping the carpet as dry as possible.

Seat belts

Clean with mild soap and lukewarm water using a cloth or sponge. Also check the belts periodically for excessive wear, fraying or cuts.

When cleaning the carpeted portions of the glove box, console box, etc. If a strong adhesive tape is used, there is a possibility that the surface of the carpet could be damaged.

A CAUTION

Water in the vehicle

• Do not splash or spill liquid in the vehicle, such as on the floor, in the hybrid battery (traction battery) air vents, and in the trunk.

Doing so may cause the hybrid battery, electrical components, etc. to malfunction or catch fire.

● Do not get any of the SRS components or wiring in the vehicle interior wet.
 (→P. 38)

An electrical malfunction may cause the airbags to deploy or not function properly, resulting in death or serious injury.

Cleaning the interior (especially instrument panel)

Do not use polish wax or polish cleaner. The instrument panel may reflect off the windshield, obstructing the driver's view and leading to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

Cleaning detergents

 Do not use the following types of detergent, as they may discolor the vehicle interior or cause streaks or damage to painted surfaces:

- Non-seat portions: Organic substances such as benzene or gasoline, alkaline or acidic solutions, dye, and bleach
- Seats: Alkaline or acidic solutions, such as thinner, benzene, and alcohol
- Do not use polish wax or polish cleaner. The instrument panel's or other interior part's painted surface may be damaged.

Preventing damage to leather surfaces

Observe the following precautions to avoid damage to and deterioration of leather surfaces:

- Remove any dust or dirt from leather surfaces immediately.
- Do not expose the vehicle to direct sunlight for extended periods of time.
 Park the vehicle in the shade, especially during summer.
- Do not place items made of vinyl, plastic, or containing wax on the upholstery, as they may stick to the leather surface if the vehicle interior heats up significantly.

Water on the floor

Do not wash the vehicle floor with water.

Vehicle systems such as the audio system may be damaged if water comes into contact with electrical components such as the audio system above or under the floor of the vehicle. Water may also cause the body to rust.

Cleaning the inside of the rear window

- Do not use glass cleaner to clean the rear window, as this may cause damage to the rear window defogger heater wires or antenna. Use a cloth dampened with lukewarm water to gently wipe the window clean. Wipe the window in strokes running parallel to the heater wires or antenna.
- Be careful not to scratch or damage the heater wires or antenna.

Maintenance requirements

To ensure safe and economical driving, day-to-day care and regular maintenance are essential. It is the owner's responsibility to perform regular checks. Toyota recommends the following maintenance:

General maintenance

General maintenance should be performed on a daily basis. This can be done by yourself or by a Toyota dealer.

Scheduled maintenance

Scheduled maintenance should be performed at specified intervals according to the maintenance schedule.

For details about maintenance items and schedules, refer to the "Scheduled Maintenance Guide" or "Owner's Manual Supplement".

Do-it-yourself maintenance

You can perform some maintenance procedures by yourself. Please be aware that do-it-yourself maintenance may affect warranty coverage.

The use of Toyota Repair Manuals is recommended.

For details about warranty coverage, refer to the separate "Owner's Warranty Information Booklet" or "Owner's Manual Supplement".

329

Repair and replacement

It is recommended that genuine Toyota parts be used for repairs to ensure performance of each system. If non-Toyota parts are used in replacement or if a repair shop other than a Toyota dealer performs repairs, confirm the warranty coverage.

Resetting the message indicating maintenance is required

After the required maintenance is performed according to the maintenance schedule, please reset the message.

To reset the data, follow the procedure described below:

- 1 Turn the power switch off with the trip meter A reading shown. (\rightarrow P. 93)
- 2 While pressing the trip meter reset knob (\rightarrow P. 93), turn the power switch to ON mode
- 3 Continue to press and hold the knob until the trip meter displays "000000".

Allow inspection and repairs to be performed by a Toyota dealer

- Toyota technicians are well-trained specialists and are kept up to date with the latest service information. They are well informed about the operations of all systems on your vehicle.
- •Keep a copy of the repair order. It proves that the maintenance that has been performed is under warranty coverage. If any problem should arise while your vehicle is under warranty, your Toyota dealer will promptly take care of it.

CAUTION

If your vehicle is not properly maintained

Improper maintenance could result in serious damage to the vehicle and possible death or serious injury.

- Handling of the 12-volt battery
- Engine exhaust, some of its constituents, and a wide variety of automobile components contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and other reproductive harm. Work in a well ventilated area.
- Oils, fuels and fluids contained in vehicles as well as waste produced by component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. Avoid exposure and wash any affected area immediately.
- 12-volt battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds which are known to cause brain damage. Wash your hands after handling. (\rightarrow P. 350)

General maintenance

Listed below are the general maintenance items that should be performed at the intervals specified in the "Owner's Warranty Information Booklet" or "Owner's Manual Supplement/Scheduled Maintenance Guide". It is recommended that any problem you notice should be brought to the attention of your Toyota dealer or qualified service shop for advice.

Items	Check points
Brake fluid	Is the brake fluid at the correct level? $(\rightarrow P. 348)$
Engine/power control unit coolant	Is the engine/power control unit coolant at the correct level? (→P. 345)
Engine oil	Is the engine oil at the correct level? $(\rightarrow P. 342)$
Exhaust system	There should not be any fumes or strange sounds.
Radiator/condenser	The radiator and condenser should be free from foreign objects. $(\rightarrow P. 347)$
Washer fluid	Is there sufficient washer fluid? (\rightarrow P. 349)

Engine compartment

Luggage compartment

Items	Check points
12-volt battery	Check the connections. $(\rightarrow P. 350)$

6-2. Maintenance

ehicle interior	
Items	Check points
Accelerator pedal	 The accelerator pedal should move smoothly (without uneven pedal effort or catching).
Hybrid transmission "Park" mecha- nism	 When parked on a slope and the shift lever is in P, is the vehicle securely stopped?
Brake pedal	 Does the brake pedal move smoothly? Does the brake pedal have appropriate clearance from the floor? (→P. 451) Does the brake pedal have the correct amount of free play? (→P. 451)
Brakes	 The vehicle should not pull to one side when the brakes are applied. The brakes should work effectively. The brake pedal should not feel spongy. The brake pedal should not get too close to the floor when the brakes are applied.

Maintenance and care

331

332 6-2. Maintenance

Items	Check points
Head restraints	• Do the head restraints move smoothly and lock securely?
Indicators/buzzers	• Do the indicators and buzzers function properly?
Lights	Do all the lights come on?
Parking brake	 Moves smoothly? When parked on a slope and the parking brake is on, is the vehicle securely stopped?
Seat belts	 Do the seat belts operate smoothly? The seat belts should not be damaged.
Seats	Do the seat controls operate prop- erly?
Steering wheel	 Does the steering wheel rotate smoothly? Does the steering wheel have the correct amount of free play? There should not be any strange sounds coming from the steering wheel.

6-2. Maintenance

Items	Check points
Doors/trunk	Do the doors/trunk operate smoothly?
Engine hood	Does the engine hood lock system work properly?
Fluid leaks	 There should not be any signs of fluid leakage after the vehicle has been parked.
Tires	 Is the tire inflation pressure correct? The tires should not be damaged or excessively worn. Have the tires been rotated according to the maintenance schedule? The wheel nuts should not be loose.
Windshield wipers	 The wiper blades should not show any signs of cracking, splitting, wear, contamination or deforma- tion. The wiper blades should clear the windshield without streaking or skipping.

A CAUTION

If the hybrid system is operating

Turn the hybrid system off and ensure that there is adequate ventilation before performing maintenance checks.

Ň

Maintenance and care

Emission inspection and maintenance (I/M) programs

Some states have vehicle emission inspection programs which include OBD (On Board Diagnostics) checks. The OBD system monitors the operation of the emission control system.

If the malfunction indicator lamp comes on

The OBD system determines that a problem exists somewhere in the emission control system. Your vehicle may not pass the I/M test and may need to be repaired. Contact your Toyota dealer to service the vehicle.

Your vehicle may not pass the I/M test in the following situations:

When the 12-volt battery is disconnected or discharged

Readiness codes that are set during ordinary driving are erased. Also, depending on your driving habits, the readiness codes may not be completely set.

When the fuel tank cap is loose

The malfunction indicator lamp comes on indicating a temporary malfunction and your vehicle may not pass the I/M test.

When the malfunction indicator lamp still remains on after several driving trips

The error code in the OBD system will not be cleared unless the vehicle is driven 40 or more times.

If your vehicle does not pass the I/M test

Contact your Toyota dealer to prepare the vehicle for re-testing.

Do-it-yourself service precautions

If you perform maintenance by yourself, be sure to follow the correct procedure as given in these sections.

Items	Parts and tools
12-volt battery condition $(\rightarrow P. 350)$	 Grease Conventional wrench (for terminal clamp bolts)
Brake fluid level (→P. 348)	 FMVSS No.116 DOT 3 or SAE J1703 brake fluid Rag or paper towel Funnel (used only for adding brake fluid)
Engine/power control unit coolant level (→P. 345)	 "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" or a similar high quality ethylene glycol-based non-silicate, non- amine, non-nitrite and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology. "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" is pre-mixed with 50% coolant and 50% deionized water. Funnel (used only for adding cool- ant)
Engine oil level $(\rightarrow P. 342)$	 "Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" or equivalent Rag or paper towel Funnel (used only for adding engine oil)

6

Maintenance and care

Items		Parts and tools
Fuses	(→P. 371)	 Fuse with same amperage rating as original
Light bulbs	(→P. 382)	 Bulb with same number and watt- age rating as original Phillips-head screwdriver Flathead screwdriver Wrench
Radiator and condenser	(→P. 347)	_
Tire inflation pressure	(→P. 361)	Tire pressure gaugeCompressed air source
Washer fluid	(→P. 349)	 Water or washer fluid containing antifreeze (for winter use) Funnel (used only for adding water or washer fluid)

336 6-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

A CAUTION The engine compartment contains many mechanisms and fluids that may move suddenly, become hot, or become electrically energized. To avoid death or serious injury, observe the following precautions. When working on the engine compartment Make sure that the "READY" indicator is off. • Keep hands, clothing and tools away from the moving fan and engine drive belt. Be careful not to touch the engine, power control unit, radiator, exhaust manifold, etc. right after driving as they may be hot. Oil and other fluids may also be hot. Do not leave anything that may burn easily, such as paper and rags, in the engine compartment. Do not smoke, cause sparks or expose an open flame to fuel. Fuel fumes are flammable. When working near the electric cooling fans or radiator grille Be sure the power switch is off. With the power switch in ON mode, the electric cooling fans may automatically start to run if the air conditioning is on and/or the coolant temperature is high. (\rightarrow P. 347) Safety glasses

Wear safety glasses to prevent flying or falling material, fluid spray, etc. from getting in your eyes.

If you remove the air cleaner filter

Driving with the air cleaner filter removed may cause excessive engine wear due to dirt in the air.

338 6-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Hood

Release the lock from the inside of the vehicle to open the hood.

1 Pull the hood lock release lever. The hood will pop up slightly.



2 Pull up the auxiliary catch lever and lift the hood.



Pre-driving check

Check that the hood is fully closed and locked.

If the hood is not locked properly, it may open while the vehicle is in motion and cause an accident, which may result in death or serious injury. 6-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Positioning a floor jack

When raising your vehicle with a floor jack, position the jack correctly. Improper placement may damage your vehicle or cause injury.

Front



Rear



Maintenance and care

340 6-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

CAUTION When raising your vehicle Make sure to observe the following precautions to reduce the possibility of death or serious injury: • Lift up the vehicle using a floor jack such as the one shown in the illustration. CTY63AX006 • When using a floor jack, follow the instructions of the manual provided with the jack. • Do not use the jack that was supplied with your vehicle. • Do not put any part of your body underneath the vehicle when it is supported only by the floor jack. Always use floor jack and/or automotive jack stands on a solid, flat, level surface. Do not start the hybrid system while the vehicle is supported by the floor jack. Stop the vehicle on level, firm ground, firmly set the parking brake and shift the shift lever to P. • Make sure to set the floor jack properly at the jack point. Raising the vehicle with an improperly positioned floor jack will damage the vehicle and may cause the vehicle to fall off the floor jack. Do not raise the vehicle while someone is in the vehicle. •When raising the vehicle, do not place any object on top of or underneath the floor jack.

341



12-volt battery

→P. 350

AVALON_HV_U (OM41457U)

Engine oil

With the engine at operating temperature and turned off, check the oil level on the dipstick.

Checking the engine oil

- 1 Park the vehicle on level ground. After warming up the engine and turning off the hybrid system, wait more than 5 minutes for the oil to drain back into the bottom of the engine.
- 2 Holding a rag under the end, pull the dipstick out.



- 3 Wipe the dipstick clean.
- 4 Reinsert the dipstick fully.
- 5 Holding a rag under the end, pull the dipstick out and check the oil level.
 - \bigcirc Low
 - 2 Normal
 - ③ Excessive

The shape of the dipstick may differ depending on the type of vehicle or engine.

6 Wipe the dipstick and reinsert it fully.



Adding engine oil

If the oil level is below or near the low level mark, add engine oil of the same type as that already in the engine.



343

Make sure to check the oil type and prepare the items needed before adding oil.

Engine oil selection	→P. 448
Oil quantity (Low \rightarrow Full)	1.6 qt. (1.5 L, 1.3 lmp. qt.)
Items	Clean funnel

1 Remove the oil filler cap by turning it counterclockwise.

2 Add engine oil slowly, checking the dipstick.

3 Install the oil filler cap by turning it clockwise.

Engine oil consumption

A certain amount of engine oil will be consumed while driving. In the following situations, oil consumption may increase, and engine oil may need to be refilled in between oil maintenance intervals.

- When the engine is new, for example directly after purchasing the vehicle or after replacing the engine
- If low quality oil or oil of an inappropriate viscosity is used
- When driving at high engine speeds or with a heavy load, or when driving while accelerating or decelerating frequently
- When leaving the engine idling for a long time, or when driving frequently through heavy traffic

Used engine oil

- Used engine oil contains potentially harmful contaminants which may cause skin disorders such as inflammation and skin cancer, so care should be taken to avoid prolonged and repeated contact. To remove used engine oil from your skin, wash thoroughly with soap and water.
- Dispose of used oil and filters only in a safe and acceptable manner. Do not dispose of used oil and filters in household trash, in sewers or onto the ground.

Call your Toyota dealer, service station or auto parts store for information concerning recycling or disposal.

Do not leave used engine oil within the reach of children.

/ NOTICE

To prevent serious engine damage

Check the oil level on a regular basis.

- When replacing the engine oil
 - Be careful not to spill engine oil on the vehicle components.
 - Avoid overfilling, or the engine could be damaged.
 - Check the oil level on the dipstick every time you refill the vehicle.
 - Be sure the engine oil filler cap is properly tightened.

Coolant

The coolant level is satisfactory if it is between the full and low lines on the reservoir when the hybrid system is cold.

Engine coolant reservoir

- 1 Reservoir cap
- (2) "F" line
- (3) "L" line

If the level is on or below the "L" line, add coolant up to the "F" line. $(\rightarrow P. 436)$



Power control unit coolant reservoir

- 1 Reservoir cap
- 2 "FULL" line
- ③ "LOW" line
 - If the level is on or below the "LOW" line, add coolant up to the "FULL" line. $(\rightarrow P. 436)$



Coolant selection

Only use "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" or a similar high quality ethylene glycol based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite, and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology.

"Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" is a mixture of 50% coolant and 50% deionized water. (Minimum temperature: -31°F [-35°C])

For more details about coolant, contact your Toyota dealer.

If the coolant level drops within a short time of replenishing

Visually check the radiator, hoses, engine/power control unit coolant reservoir caps, drain cock and water pump.

If you cannot find a leak, have your Toyota dealer test the cap and check for leaks in the cooling system.

CAUTION

When the hybrid system is hot

Do not remove the engine/power control unit coolant reservoir caps or the radiator cap.(\rightarrow P. 439)

The cooling system may be under pressure and may spray hot coolant if the cap is removed, causing serious injuries, such as burns.

🕂 NOTICE

When adding coolant

Coolant is neither plain water nor straight antifreeze. The correct mixture of water and antifreeze must be used to provide proper lubrication, corrosion protection and cooling. Be sure to read the antifreeze or coolant label.

If you spill coolant

Be sure to wash it off with water to prevent it from damaging parts or paint.

Radiators and condenser

Check the radiators and condenser and clear away any foreign objects.

If either of the above parts is extremely dirty or you are not sure of their condition, have your vehicle inspected by your Toyota dealer.

A CAUTION

When the hybrid system is hot

Do not touch the radiators or condenser as they may be hot and cause serious injuries, such as burns.

Brake fluid

Checking fluid level

The brake fluid level should be between the "MAX" and "MIN" lines on the tank.

- (1) "MAX" line
- (2) "MIN" line



Adding fluid

Make sure to check the fluid type and prepare the necessary item.

Fluid type	FMVSS No.116 DOT 3 or SAE J1703 brake fluid
Items	Clean funnel

Brake fluid can absorb moisture from the air

Excess moisture in the brake fluid can cause a dangerous loss of braking efficiency. Use only newly opened brake fluid.

CAUTION

When filling the reservoir

Take care as brake fluid can harm your hands and eyes and damage painted surfaces.

If fluid gets on your hands or in your eyes, flush the affected area with clean water immediately.

If you still experience discomfort, see a doctor.

🔨 NOTICE

If the fluid level is low or high

It is normal for the brake fluid level to go down slightly as the brake pads wear out or when the fluid level in the accumulator is high.

If the reservoir needs frequent refilling, there may be a serious problem.

6-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Washer fluid

If any washer does not work or the warning message appears on the multi-information display, the washer tank may be empty. Add washer fluid.



A CAUTION

When adding washer fluid

Do not add washer fluid when the hybrid system is hot or operating as washer fluid contains alcohol and may catch fire if spilled on the engine etc.

Do not use any fluid other than washer fluid

Do not use soapy water or engine antifreeze instead of washer fluid. Doing so may cause streaking on the vehicle's painted surfaces.

Diluting washer fluid

Dilute washer fluid with water as necessary.

Refer to the freezing temperatures listed on the label of the washer fluid bottle. 6

350 6-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

12-volt battery

Location

The 12-volt battery is located on the right-hand side of luggage compartment.



Removing the 12-volt battery cover

Pull the 12-volt battery cover while pressing down on the tab.



Exterior

Make sure that the 12-volt battery terminals are not corroded and that there are no loose connections, cracks, or loose clamps.

- 1 Terminals
- (2) Hold-down clamp



Before recharging

When recharging, the 12-volt battery produces hydrogen gas which is flammable and explosive. Therefore, observe the following precautions before recharging:

- If recharging with the 12-volt battery installed on the vehicle, be sure to disconnect the ground cable.
- Make sure the power switch on the charger is off when connecting and disconnecting the charger cables to the 12-volt battery.

After recharging/reconnecting the 12-volt battery

- The hybrid system may not start. Follow the procedure below to initialize the system.
- 1 Shift the shift lever to P.
- 2 Open and close any of the doors.
- 3 Restart the hybrid system.
- Unlocking the doors using the smart key system may not be possible immediately after reconnecting the 12-volt battery. If this happens, use the wireless remote control or the mechanical key to lock/unlock the doors.
- Start the hybrid system with the power switch in ACCESSORY mode. The hybrid system may not start when the power switch turned from off. However, the hybrid system will operate normally from the second attempt.
- The power switch mode is recorded by the vehicle. If the 12-volt battery is reconnected, the vehicle will return the power switch mode to the status it was in before the 12-volt battery was disconnected. Make sure to turn off the power switch before disconnect the 12-volt battery. Take extra care when connecting the 12-volt battery if the power switch mode prior to discharge is unknown.

If the system will not start even after multiple attempts at all methods above, contact your Toyota dealer.

Chemicals in the 12-volt battery

The 12-volt battery contains poisonous and corrosive sulfuric acid and may produce hydrogen gas which is flammable and explosive. To reduce the risk of death or serious injury, take the following precautions while working on or near the 12-volt battery:

- Do not cause sparks by touching the 12-volt battery terminals with tools.
- Do not smoke or light a match near the 12-volt battery.
- Avoid contact with eyes, skin and clothes.
- Never inhale or swallow electrolyte.
- Wear protective safety glasses when working near the 12-volt battery.
- Keep children away from the 12-volt battery.
- Where to safely charge the 12-volt battery

Always charge the 12-volt battery in an open area. Do not charge the 12-volt battery in a garage or closed room where there is insufficient ventilation.

How to recharge the 12-volt battery

Only perform a slow charge (5 A or less). The 12-volt battery may explode if charged at a quicker rate.

CAUTION Emergency measures regarding electrolyte If electrolyte gets in your eyes Flush your eyes with clean water for at least 15 minutes and get immediate medical attention. If possible, continue to apply water with a sponge or cloth while traveling to the nearest medical facility. If electrolyte gets on your skin Wash the affected area thoroughly. If you feel pain or burning, get medical attention immediately. • If electrolyte gets on your clothes It can soak through clothing on to your skin. Immediately take off the clothing and follow the procedure above if necessary. If you accidentally swallow electrolyte Drink a large quantity of water or milk. Get emergency medical attention immediately. When replacing the 12-volt battery Use a 12-volt battery designed for this vehicle. Failure to do so may cause gas (hydrogen) to enter the passenger compartment, causing a fire or explosion. For replacement of the 12-volt battery, contact your Toyota dealer. NOTICE

When recharging the 12-volt battery

Never recharge the 12-volt battery while the hybrid system is operating. Also, be sure all accessories are turned off.

Maintenance and care

Tires

Replace or rotate tires in accordance with maintenance schedules and treadwear.

Checking tires

- 1 New tread
- (2) Treadwear indicator
- ③ Worn tread

The location of treadwear indicators is shown by the "TWI" or " Δ " marks, etc., molded on the sidewall of each tire.

Check spare tire condition and pressure if not rotated.



Tire rotation

Rotate the tires in the order shown.

To equalize tire wear and extend tire life, Toyota recommends that tire rotation is carried out at the same interval as tire inspection.



Tire pressure warning system

Your vehicle is equipped with a tire pressure warning system that uses tire pressure warning valves and transmitters to detect low tire inflation pressure before serious problems arise.

Installing tire pressure warning valves and transmitters

When replacing tires or wheels, tire pressure warning valves and transmitters must also be installed.

When new tire pressure warning valves and transmitters are installed, new ID codes must be registered in the tire pressure warning computer and the tire pressure warning system must be initialized. Have tire pressure warning valve and transmitter ID codes registered by your Toyota dealer. (\rightarrow P. 357)

Initializing the tire pressure warning system

- The tire pressure warning system must be initialized in the following circumstances:
 - When changing the tire size.
 - When the tire inflation pressure is changed such as when changing traveling speed or load weight.

When the tire pressure warning system is initialized, the current tire inflation pressure is set as the benchmark pressure.

How to initialize the tire pressure warning system

- 1 Park the vehicle in a safe place and turn the power switch off. Initialization cannot be performed while the vehicle is moving.
- 2 Adjust the tire inflation pressure to the specified cold tire inflation pressure level. (\rightarrow P. 451)

Make sure to adjust the tire pressure to the specified cold tire inflation pressure level. The tire pressure warning system will operate based on this pressure level.

- 3 Turn the power switch to ON mode.
- 4 Press and hold the tire pressure warning reset switch until the tire pressure warning light blinks slowly 3 times.



5 Wait for a few minutes with the power switch in ON mode and then turn the power switch off.

AVALON_HV_U (OM41457U)

Registering ID codes

The tire pressure warning valve and transmitter is equipped with a unique ID code. When replacing a tire pressure warning valve and transmitter, it is necessary to register the ID code. Have the ID code registered by your Toyota dealer.

When to replace your vehicle's tires

Tires should be replaced if:

- You have tire damage such as cuts, splits, cracks deep enough to expose the fabric, and bulges indicating internal damage
- A tire goes flat repeatedly or cannot be properly repaired due to the size or location of a cut or other damage

If you are not sure, consult with your Toyota dealer.

Replacing tires and wheels

If the ID code of the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter is not registered, the tire pressure warning system will not work properly. After driving for about 20 minutes, the tire pressure warning light blinks for 1 minute and stays on to indicate a system malfunction.

Tire life

Any tire over 6 years old must be checked by a qualified technician even if it has seldom or never been used or damage is not obvious.

Routine tire inflation pressure checks

The tire pressure warning system does not replace routine tire inflation pressure checks. Make sure to check tire inflation pressure as part of your routine of daily vehicle checks.

Maximum load of tire

Check that the maximum load of the replacement tire is greater than 1/2 of the Gross Axle Weight Ratings (GAWR) of either the front axle or the rear axle, whichever is greater.

For the GAWR, see the Certification Label. For the maximum load of the tire, see the load limit at maximum cold tire inflation pressure mentioned on the sidewall of the tire. (\rightarrow P. 456)



care

■ Tire types

Summer tires

Summer tires are high-speed performance tires best suited to highway driving under dry conditions. Since summer tires do not have the same traction performance as snow tires, summer tires are inadequate for driving on snow-covered or icy roads. For driving on snow-covered roads or icy roads, the use of snow tires is recommended. When installing snow tires, be sure to replace all four tires.

All season tires

All season tires are designed to provide better traction in snow and to be adequate for driving in most winter conditions as well as for use year-round. All season tires, however, do not have adequate traction performance compared with snow tires in heavy or loose snow. Also, all season tires fall short in acceleration and handling performance compared with summer tires in highway driving.

Snow tires

For driving on snow-covered roads or icy roads, we recommend using snow tires. If you need snow tires, select tires of the same size, construction and load capacity as the originally installed tires. Since your vehicle has radial tires as original equipment, make sure your snow tires also have radial construction. Do not install studded tires without first checking local regulations for possible restrictions. Snow tires should be installed on all wheels. (\rightarrow P. 256)

Initializing the tire pressure warning system

Initialize the system with the tire inflation pressure adjusted to the specified level.

If the tread on snow tires wears down below 0.16 in. (4 mm)

The effectiveness of the tires as snow tires is lost.

If you press the tire pressure warning reset switch accidentally

If initialization is performed, adjust the tire inflation pressure to the specified level and initialize the tire pressure warning system again.

When initialization of the tire pressure warning system has failed

Initialization can be completed in a few minutes. However, in the following cases, the settings have not been recorded and the system will not operate properly. If repeated attempts to record tire inflation pressure settings are unsuccessful, have the vehicle inspected by your Toyota dealer.

- When operating the tire pressure warning reset switch, the tire pressure warning light does not blink 3 times.
- After driving for a certain period of time since the initialization has been completed, the warning light comes on after blinking for 1 minute.

Tire pressure warning system certification

FCC ID: PAXPMVC010

NOTE:

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC WARNING:

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

A CAUTION

When inspecting or replacing tires

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidents. Failure to do so may cause damage to parts of the drive train as well as dangerous handling characteristics, which may lead to an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- Do not mix tires of different makes, models or tread patterns. Also, do not mix tires of remarkably different treadwear.
- Do not use tire sizes other than those recommended by Toyota.
- Do not mix differently constructed tires (radial, bias-belted or bias-ply tires).
- Do not mix summer, all season and snow tires.
- Do not use tires that have been used on another vehicle. Do not use tires if you do not know how they were used previously.

When initializing the tire pressure warning system

Do not operate the tire pressure warning reset switch without first adjusting the tire inflation pressure to the specified level. Otherwise, the tire pressure warning light may not come on even if the tire inflation pressure is low, or it may come on when the tire inflation pressure is actually normal.

NOTICE

Repairing or replacing tires, wheels, tire pressure warning valves, transmitters and tire valve caps

 When removing or fitting the wheels, tires or the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters, contact your Toyota dealer as the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters may be damaged if not handled correctly.

• When replacing tire valve caps, do not use tire valve caps other than those specified. The cap may become stuck.

To avoid damage to the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters

When a tire is repaired with liquid sealants, the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may not operate properly. If a liquid sealant is used, contact your Toyota dealer or other qualified service shop as soon as possible. Make sure to replace the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter when replacing the tire. (\rightarrow P. 355)

Driving on rough roads

Take particular care when driving on roads with loose surfaces or potholes. These conditions may cause losses in tire inflation pressure, reducing the cushioning ability of the tires. In addition, driving on rough roads may cause damage to the tires themselves, as well as the vehicle's wheels and body.

If tire inflation pressure of each tire becomes low while driving

Do not continue driving, or your tires and/or wheels may be ruined.
Tire inflation pressure

Tire inflation pressure

The recommended cold tire inflation pressure and tire size are displayed on the tire and loading information label. (\rightarrow P. 451)



Inspection and adjustment procedure

- (1) Tire valve
- (2) Tire pressure gauge



- 1 Remove the tire valve cap.
- 2 Press the tip of the tire pressure gauge onto the tire valve.
- 3 Read the pressure using the gauge gradations.
- 4 If the tire inflation pressure is not at the recommended level, adjust the pressure.

If you add too much air, press the center of the valve to deflate.

- 5 After completing the tire inflation pressure measurement and adjustment, apply soapy water to the valve and check for leakage.
- 6 Put the tire valve cap back on.

Tire inflation pressure check interval

You should check tire inflation pressure every two weeks, or at least once a month.

Do not forget to check the spare.

Effects of incorrect tire inflation pressure

- Driving with incorrect tire inflation pressure may result in the following:
- Reduced fuel efficiency
- Reduced driving comfort and tire life
- Reduced safety
- Damage to the drive train
- If a tire needs frequent inflating, have it checked by your Toyota dealer.

Instructions for checking tire inflation pressure

- When checking tire inflation pressure, observe the following:
- Check only when the tires are cold.

If your vehicle has been parked for at least 3 hours or has not been driven for more than 1 mile or 1.5 km, you will get an accurate cold tire inflation pressure reading.

Always use a tire pressure gauge.

The appearance of the tire can be misleading. In addition, tire inflation pressure that is even just a few pounds off can affect ride quality and handling.

- Do not reduce tire inflation pressure after driving. It is normal for tire inflation pressure to be higher after driving.
- Never exceed the vehicle capacity weight.

Passengers and luggage weight should be placed so that the vehicle is balanced.

A CAUTION

Proper inflation is critical to save tire performance

Keep your tires properly inflated. Otherwise, the following conditions may occur and result in an accident causing death or serious injury:

- Excessive wear
- Uneven wear
- Poor handling
- Possibility of blowouts resulting from overheated tires
- Poor sealing of the tire bead
- Wheel deformation and/or tire separation
- A greater possibility of tire damage from road hazards

When inspecting and adjusting tire inflation pressure

Be sure to put the tire valve caps back on.

Without the valve caps, dirt or moisture could get into the valve and cause air leakage, which could result in an accident. If the caps are lost, replace them as soon as possible.

Maintenance and care

Wheels

If a wheel is bent, cracked or heavily corroded, it should be replaced. Otherwise, the tire may separate from the wheel or cause a loss of handling control.

Wheel selection

When replacing wheels, care should be taken to ensure that they are equivalent to those removed in load capacity, diameter, rim width and inset^{*}.

Replacement wheels are available at your Toyota dealer.

*: Conventionally referred to as "offset".

Toyota does not recommend using the following:

- Wheels of different sizes or types
- Used wheels
- Bent wheels that have been straightened

Aluminum wheel precautions

- Use only Toyota wheel nuts and wrenches designed for use with your aluminum wheels.
- When rotating, repairing or changing your tires, check that the wheel nuts are still tight after driving 1000 miles (1600 km).
- Be careful not to damage the aluminum wheels when using tire chains.
- Use only Toyota genuine balance weights or equivalent and a plastic or rubber hammer when balancing your wheels.

When replacing wheels

The wheels of your vehicle are equipped with tire pressure warning valves and transmitters that allow the tire pressure warning system to provide advance warning in the event of a loss in tire inflation pressure. Whenever wheels are replaced, tire pressure warning valves and transmitters must be installed. (\rightarrow P. 355)

CAUTION

When replacing wheels

- Do not use wheels that are a different size from those recommended in the Owner's Manual, as this may result in a loss of handling control.
- Never use an inner tube in a leaking wheel which is designed for a tubeless tire. Doing so may result in an accident, causing death or serious injury.
- When installing the wheel nuts
- Be sure to install the wheel nuts with the tapered ends facing inward. Installing the nuts with the tapered ends facing outward can cause the wheel to break and eventually cause the wheel to come off while driving, which could lead to an accident resulting in death or serious injury.



Never use oil or grease on the wheel bolts or wheel nuts. Oil and grease may cause the wheel nuts to be excessively tightened, leading to bolt or disc wheel damage. In addition, the oil or grease can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel may fall off, causing an accident and resulting in death or serious injury. Remove any oil or grease from the wheel bolts or wheel nuts. Maintenance and care

366 6-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Replacing tire pressure warning valves and transmitters

- Because tire repair or replacement may affect the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters, make sure to have tires serviced by your Toyota dealer or other qualified service shop. In addition, make sure to purchase your tire pressure warning valves and transmitters at your Toyota dealer.
- Ensure that only genuine Toyota wheels are used on your vehicle. Tire pressure warning valves and transmitters may not work properly with non-genuine wheels.

6

б

Air conditioning filter

The air conditioning filter must be changed regularly to maintain air conditioning efficiency.

Removal method

- 1 Turn the power switch off.
- 2 Open the glove box. (\rightarrow P. 278)
- 3 Remove the glove box cover.



5 Remove the air conditioning filter and replace it with a new one.

The " \uparrow UP" marks shown on the filter should be pointing up.





CTY63AX042

ning filtor

 (\bigcirc)

6

Maintenance and care

Checking interval

Inspect and replace the air conditioning filter according to the maintenance schedule. In dusty areas or areas with heavy traffic flow, early replacement may be required. (For scheduled maintenance information, please refer to the "Schedule maintenance guide" or "Owner's Manual Supplement".)

If air flow from the vents decreases dramatically

The filter may be clogged. Check the filter and replace if necessary.

When using the air conditioning system

Make sure that a filter is always installed.

Using the air conditioning system without a filter may cause damage to the system.

Electronic key battery

Replace the battery with a new one if it is depleted.

You will need the following items:

- Flathead screwdriver
- Small flathead screwdriver
- Lithium battery CR2032

Replacing the battery

1 Take out the mechanical key.



2 Remove the cover.

To prevent damage to the key, cover the tip of the screwdriver with a rag.

CTYGAZOOI

6

Maintenance and care

3 Remove the depleted battery. Insert a new battery with the "+" terminal facing up.



369

Use a CR2032 lithium battery

- Batteries can be purchased at your Toyota dealer, local electrical appliance shops or camera stores.
- Replace only with the same or equivalent type recommended by the manufacturer.
- Dispose of used batteries according to local laws.

If the electronic key battery is depleted

The following symptoms may occur:

- The smart key system and wireless remote control will not function properly.
- The operational range will be reduced.

CAUTION

Removed battery and other parts

These parts are small and if swallowed by a child, they can cause choking. Keep away from children. Failure to do so could result in death or serious injury.

For normal operation after replacing the battery

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidents:

- Always work with dry hands.
 Moisture may cause the battery to rust.
- Do not touch or move any other component inside the remote control.
- Do not bend either of the battery terminals.

Checking and replacing fuses

If any of the electrical components do not operate, a fuse may have blown. If this happens, check and replace the fuses as necessary.

- 1 Turn the power switch off.
- 2 After a system failure, see "Fuse layout and amperage ratings" for details about which fuse to check. (\rightarrow P. 374)
- 3 Open the Fuse box cover.
- Engine compartment (type A fuse box)

Push the tab in and lift the lid off.



Engine compartment (type B fuse box)

Push the tabs in and lift the lid off.



Maintenance and care

6

372 6-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

- Driver's side instrument panel Remove the lid.
- 4 Remove the fuse with the pullout tool.

Only type A fuse can be removed using the pullout tool.



- 5 Check if the fuse is blown.
 - (1) Normal fuse

2 Blown fuse

Type A and B:

Replace the blown fuse with a new fuse of an appropriate amperage rating. The amperage rating can be found on the fuse box lid.

Type C:

Contact your Toyota dealer.



► Type B



► Type C



6

Fuse layout and amperage ratings

Engine compartment (type A fuse box)

Fuse block



▶ Fuse block on the back of the cover



	Fuse	Ampere	Circuit
1	METER-IG2	5 A	Gauge and meters
2	FAN	50 A	Electric cooling fans
3	H-LP CLN	30 A	No circuit
4	ENG W/PMP	30 A	Multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system
5	PTC HTR NO.2	50 A	PTC heater
6	PTC HTR NO.1	50 A	PTC heater

6-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

	Fuse	Ampere	Circuit
7	HTR	50 A	Air conditioning system
8	DC/DC	120 A	Hybrid system
9	ABS NO.1	30 A	Electronically controlled brake system
10	H-LP-MAIN	30 A	H-LP LH-LO, H-LP RH-LO, headlight (low beam)
11	ABS MTR NO.2	50 A	Electronically controlled brake system
12	ABS MTR NO.1	50 A	Electronically controlled brake system
13	R/B NO.2	50 A	IGCT-MAIN, INV W/PMP
14	EPS	80 A	Electric power steering
15	S-HORN	7.5 A	S-HORN
16	DEICER	15 A	No circuit
17	HORN	10 A	Horns
18	EFI NO.2	15 A	Multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system, electroni- cally controlled brake system
19	EFI NO.3	7.5 A	Multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system
20	INJ	7.5 A	Multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system
21	ECU-IG2 NO.3	7.5 A	Multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system, steering lock system, hybrid system, stop lights, high-mounted stop light
22	IGN	15 A	Starter system
23	D/L-AM2	20 A	No circuit
24	IG2-MAIN	25 A	IGN, INJ, METER-IG2, ECU-IG2 NO.3, A/B, ECU-IG2 NO.2, ECU-IG2 NO.1
25	DC/DC-S	7.5 A	Hybrid system
26	MAYDAY	5 A	MAYDAY
27	TURN&HAZ	15 A	Turn signal lights, emergency flashers, gauge and meters, outside rear view mirrors
28	STRG LOCK	10 A	Steering lock system

Maintenance and care

AVALON_HV_U (OM41457U)

375

376 6-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

	Fuse	Ampere	Circuit
29	AMP	15 A	Audio system
30	H-LP LH-LO	15 A ^{*1}	Left-hand headlight (low beam)
		20 A ^{*2}	
31	H-LP RH-LO	15 A ^{*1}	Right-hand headlight (low beam)
51		20 A ^{*2}	Right-hand headlight (low beam)
32	MNL H-LP LVL*2	7.5 A	No circuit
33	EFI-MAIN NO.1	30 A	Multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system
34	SMART	5 A	Smart key system
35	ETCS	10 A	Electronic throttle control system
36	ABS NO.2	7.5 A	Electronically controlled brake system
37	EFI NO.1	7.5 A	Multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system
38	EFI-MAIN NO.2	20 A	A/F sensor
39	AM2	7.5 A	Hybrid system
40	RADIO-B	20 A	Audio system, navigation system
41	DOME	7.5 A	Vanity lights, interior lights, personal lights, trunk light, door courtesy lights, illuminated entry system, ambient light
42	ECU-B NO.1	10 A	Smart key system, gauge and meters, steering sensor, air conditioning system, outside rear view mirror, front power seats, multiplex communication system, starter system
43	SPARE	25 A	Spare fuse
44	SPARE	30 A	Spare fuse

*1: Vehicles with halogen headlight

 $^{*2:}$ Vehicles with discharge headlight



Engine compartment (type B fuse box)

Maintenance and care

6

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 □ □ 12 13 ⊔ ⊔ 11 Ν CTY63AX017

	Fuse	Ampere	Circuit
1	H-LP LVL	7.5 A	Automatic headlight leveling system
2	S/HTR RR	20 A	Rear seat heater
3	ECU-ACC	5 A	Air conditioning system, outside rear view mirrors, multiplex communication system, glove box light
4	RR P/OUTLET	15 A	Power outlets
5	ECU-IG2 NO.2	7.5 A	Smart key system, electronically con- trolled brake system
6	ECU-IG2 NO.1	7.5 A	Hybrid system
7	A/B	10 A	Front passenger occupant classification system, SRS airbag system
8	FUEL DR LOCK	10 A	Fuel filler door lock
9	D/L-AM1	20 A	Multiplex communication system, power door lock, trunk opener switch
10	PSB	30 A	Pre-collision system
11	P/SEAT FR	30 A	Power seats
12	S/ROOF	10 A	Moon roof
13	A/C-B	7.5 A	Air conditioning system

Driver's side instrument panel

6-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

	Fuse	Ampere	Circuit
14	STOP	7.5 A	Stop/tail lights, electronically controlled brake system, high mounted stoplight, shift lock control system, hybrid system, Vehicle Proximity Notification System, dynamic radar cruise control, pre-colli- sion system
15	AM1	7.5 A	No circuit
16	4-WAY LUMBAR	7.5 A	Power seat
17	ECU-B NO.2	10 A	Smart key system, tire pressure warning system, power window, front passenger occupant classification system
18	OBD	10 A	On-board diagnosis system
19	S/HTR&FAN F/L	10 A	Seat heaters
20	S/HTR&FAN F/R	10 A	Seat heaters
21	RADIO-ACC	5 A	Audio system, navigation system
22	FR P/OUTLET	15 A	Power outlets
23	WIPER-S	10 A	Dynamic radar cruise control, pre-colli- sion system
24	EPS-IG1	7.5 A	Electric power steering
25	BKUP LP	7.5 A	Multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system, electronic controlled transmission
26	WIPER	25 A	Windshield wipers and washer
27	A/C-IG1	7.5 A	Air conditioning system, PTC heater
28	WASHER	10 A	Windshield wipers and washer
29	DOOR R/L	20 A	Rear left-hand power windows
30	DOOR F/L	20 A	Power windows, outside rear view mir- rors
31	DOOR R/R	20 A	Rear right-hand power windows
32	DOOR F/R	20 A	Power windows, outside rear view mir- rors
33	TAIL	10 A	Parking lights, side marker lights, stop/tail lights, rear turn signal lights, back up lights, license plate lights, fog lights

6

Maintenance and care

380 6-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

	Fuse	Ampere	Circuit
34	PANEL	10 A	Switch illumination, air conditioning sys- tem, rear sunshade, seat heater, Blind Spot Monitor, driving mode select switch, steering wheel switch, ambient light, seat ventilators, trunk opener switch, vehicle stability control off switch, emergency flashers, outside rear view mirrors, audio system, navigation system
35	ECU-IG1 NO.1	10 A	Electric cooling fans, steering sensor, windshield wipers and washer, rear sun- shade, seat heater, multiport fuel injec- tion system/sequential multiport fuel injection system, daytime running lights, Blind Spot Monitor, charging system, headlight (high beam), rear window defogger, back up lights, outside rear view mirror defoggers, fog lights, elec- tronically controlled brake system, Vehi- cle Proximity Notification System, dynamic radar cruise control, pre-colli- sion system
36	ECU-IG1 NO.2	10 A	Shift lock control system, seat heaters, seat ventilators, smart key system, tire pressure warning system, wireless remote control, multiplex communication system, audio system, navigation sys- tem, moon roof, auto anti-glare inside rear view mirror, outside rear view mir- rors, pre-collision system, dynamic radar cruise control, air conditioning controls, rain-sensing windshield wipers, starting system

After a fuse is replaced

- If the lights do not turn on even after the fuse has been replaced, a bulb may need replacement. (→P. 382)
- If the replaced fuse blows again, have the vehicle inspected by your Toyota dealer.

If there is an overload in a circuit

The fuses are designed to blow, protecting the wiring harness from damage.

When replacing light bulbs

Toyota recommends that you use genuine Toyota products designed for this vehicle. Because certain bulbs are connected to circuits designed to prevent overload, non-genuine parts or parts not designed for this vehicle may be unusable.

CAUTION

To prevent system breakdowns and vehicle fire

Observe the following precautions.

Failure to do so may cause damage to the vehicle, and possibly a fire or injury.

- Never use a fuse of a higher amperage rating than that indicated, or use any other object in place of a fuse.
- Always use a genuine Toyota fuse or equivalent.
 Never replace a fuse with a wire, even as a temporary fix.
- Do not modify the fuses or fuse boxes.

Before replacing fuses

Have the cause of electrical overload determined and repaired by your Toyota dealer as soon as possible.

Maintenance and care

Light bulbs

You may replace the following bulbs by yourself. The difficulty level of replacement varies depending on the bulb. If necessary bulb replacement seems difficult to perform, contact your Toyota dealer.

For more information about replacing other light bulbs, contact your Toyota dealer.

Preparing for light bulb replacement

Check the wattage of the light bulb to be replaced. (\rightarrow P. 452)

Bulb locations

Front



- (1) Headlight low beam (halogen bulb)
- (2) Headlight high beam and daytime running light (vehicles with halogen bulbs for low beams)
 Headlight high beam (vehicles with discharge bulbs for low beams)
- ③ Fog light (if equipped)
- (4) Front turn signal/parking light

6-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance



Rear

③ License plate light

Replacing light bulbs

Headlight low beam (halogen bulb)

1 Unplug the connector while pressing the lock release.

2 Turn the bulb base counterclockwise.





 3 Set the new light bulb.
 Align the 3 tabs on the light bulb with the mounting, and insert. Turn it clockwise to set.



4 Set the connector.

After installing the connector, shake the bulb base gently to check that it is not loose, turn the headlights on once and visually confirm that no light is leaking through the mounting.



- Headlight high beam and daytime running light (vehicles with halogen bulbs for low beams)/Headlight high beam (vehicles with discharge bulbs for low beams)
- 1 Unplug the connector while pressing the lock release.

2 Turn the bulb base counterclockwise.



- CTY63AX019
- 3 Set the new light bulb.

Align the 3 tabs on the light bulb with the mounting, and insert. Turn it clockwise to set.

4 Set the connector.

After installing the connector, shake the bulb base gently to check that it is not loose, turn the headlights on once and visually confirm that no light is leaking through the mounting.





CTY63AX085

Fog light (if equipped)

1 To allow enough working space, turn the steering wheel to the opposite side of the bulb to be replaced. Remove the 3 fender liner clips.

> Turn the steering wheel to the left when replacing the right side light bulb, and turn the steering wheel to the right when replacing the left side light bulb.

- 2 Remove the fender liner bolt and partly remove the fender liner.
- 3 Unplug the connector while pressing the lock release.





- 4 Turn the bulb base counterclockwise.
- 5 Set the new light bulb.
 - Align the 3 tabs on the light bulb with the mounting, and insert. Turn it clockwise to set.
- 6 Set the connector.

After installing the connector, shake the bulb base gently to check that it is not loose, turn the fog lights on once and visually confirm that no light is leaking through the mounting.

7 Reinstall the fender liner and the fender liner bolt.





5



CTY63AX023

CTY63AX024

388 6-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

8 Reinstall the fender liner clips.



Front turn signal/parking light

1 To allow enough working space, turn the steering wheel to the opposite side of the bulb to be replaced. Remove the 3 fender liner clips.

> Turn the steering wheel to the left when replacing the right side light bulb, and turn the steering wheel to the right when replacing the left side light bulb.







Maintenance and care

390 6-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

5 Remove the light bulb.



6 When installing, reverse the steps listed.

Rear turn signal light

1 Open the trunk lid and remove the luggage trim cover clip.



2 Pull the hook while depressing the button.





Back-up light

- 1 Open the trunk lid and remove the clips. Then partly remove the trunk panel cover.
- 2 Turn the bulb base counterclockwise.





3 Remove the light bulb.



4 When installing, reverse the steps listed.

AVALON_HV_U (OM41457U)

License plate light

1 Remove the cover.

To prevent damaging the vehicle, wrap the flathead screwdriver with a tape.



2 Remove the lens.

Insert a properly sized screwdriver into the hole of the lens, and pry off the lens as shown in the illustration.

To prevent damaging the vehicle, wrap the screwdriver with a tape.

3 Remove the light bulb.



4 When installing, reverse the steps listed.

Replacing the following bulbs

If any of the lights listed below has burnt out, have it replaced by your Toyota dealer.

- Headlight low beams (discharge bulb)
- Daytime running lights (vehicles with discharge headlights)
- Side marker lights
- Side turn signal lights
- Stop/tail lights
- High mounted stoplight
- Outer foot lights (if equipped)

Maintenance and care

CTY63AX075

Discharge headlights (if equipped)

If voltage to the discharge bulbs is insufficient, the bulbs may not come on, or may go out temporarily. The discharge bulbs will come on when normal power is restored.

LED light bulbs

The daytime running lights (vehicles with discharge headlights), stop/tail lights, high mounted stoplight and outer foot lights each consist of a number of LEDs. If any of the LEDs burn out, take your vehicle to your Toyota dealer to have the light replaced.

Condensation build-up on the inside of the lens

Temporary condensation build-up on the inside of the lens does not indicate a malfunction. Contact your Toyota dealer for more information in the following situations:

• Large drops of water have built up on the inside of the lens.

Water has built up inside the lens.

Removing and installing the clips

The fender liner, luggage trim cover and trunk panel cover clip

- ① Removing
- Installing



■ When replacing light bulbs →P. 381

CAUTION

Replacing light bulbs

• Turn off the lights. Do not attempt to replace the bulb immediately after turning off the lights.

The bulbs become very hot and may cause burns.

- Do not touch the glass portion of the light bulb with bare hands. When it is unavoidable to hold the glass portion, use and hold with a clean dry cloth to avoid getting moisture and oils on the bulb.
 - Also, if the bulb is scratched or dropped, it may blow out or crack.
- Fully install light bulbs and any parts used to secure them. Failure to do so may result in heat damage, fire, or water entering the headlight unit. This may damage the headlights or cause condensation to build up on the lens.
- Vehicles with discharge headlights:

While the low beam headlights are turned on, and for a short time after they have been turned off, metal components at the rear of the headlight assembly will be extremely hot. To prevent burns, do not touch these metal components until you are certain they have cooled down.




When trouble arises

7

7-1.	Essential information
	Emergency flashers 398
	If your vehicle has to be
	stopped in an
	emergency 399
7-2.	Steps to take in an emergency
	If your vehicle needs to
	be towed 400
	If you think something
	is wrong 403
	If a warning light turns
	on or a warning buzzer
	sounds 404
	If a warning message is
	displayed 414
	If you have a flat tire 415
	If the hybrid system will
	not start 427
	If the shift lever cannot
	be shifted from P 429
	If the electronic key does
	not operate properly 430
	If the 12-volt battery is
	discharged 432
	If your vehicle
	overheats 436
	If the vehicle becomes
	stuck 440

398 7-1. Essential information

Emergency flashers

The emergency flashers are used to warn other drivers when the vehicle has to be stopped in the road due to a breakdown, etc.

Press the switch.

All the turn signal lights will flash. To turn them off, press the switch once again.



Emergency flashers

If the emergency flashers are used for a long time while the hybrid system is not operating (while the "READY" indicator is not illuminated), the 12-volt battery may discharge.

7-1. Essential information

399

If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency

Only in an emergency, such as if it becomes impossible to stop the vehicle in the normal way, stop the vehicle using the following procedure:

- Steadily step on the brake pedal with both feet and firmly depress it. Do not pump the brake pedal repeatedly as this will increase the effort required to slow the vehicle.
- 2 Shift the shift lever to N.
- ► If the shift lever is shifted to N
- 3 After slowing down, stop the vehicle in a safe place by the road.
- 4 Stop the hybrid system.
- If the shift lever cannot be shifted to N
- 3 Keep depressing the brake pedal with both feet to reduce vehicle speed as much as possible.
- To stop the hybrid system, press and hold the power switch for 2 consecutive seconds or more, or press it briefly 3 times or more in succession.



5 Stop the vehicle in a safe place by the road.

A CAUTION

If the hybrid system has to be turned off while driving

Power assist for the steering wheel will be lost, making the steering wheel heavier to turn. Decelerate as much as possible before turning off the hybrid system.

If your vehicle needs to be towed

If towing is necessary, we recommend having your vehicle towed by your Toyota dealer or commercial towing service, using a lift-type truck or flat bed truck.

Use a safety chain system for all towing, and abide by all state/ provincial and local laws.

If towing your vehicle with a wheel-lift type truck from the front, the vehicle's rear wheels and axles must be in good conditions. $(\rightarrow P. 400, 402)$

If they are damaged, use a towing dolly or flatbed truck.

Situations needs to contact dealers before towing

The following may indicate a problem with your transmission. Contact your Toyota dealer or commercial towing service before towing.

- A warning message for the hybrid system is shown on the multiinformation display and the vehicle does not move.
- The vehicle makes an abnormal sound.

Towing with a sling-type truck

Do not tow with a sling-type truck to prevent body damage.



Towing with a wheel-lift type truck

- ▶ From the front
- Release the parking brake.
- ▶ From the rear

Use a towing dolly under the front wheels.





Using a flatbed truck

If your Toyota is transported by a flatbed truck, it should be tied down at the locations shown in the illustration.

If you use chains or cables to tie down your vehicle, the angles shaded in black must be 45° .

Do not overly tighten the tie downs or the vehicle may be damaged.





Ľ.



A CAUTION

Observe the following precaution.

Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

When towing the vehicle

Be sure to transport the vehicle with the front wheels raised or with all four wheels raised off the ground. If the vehicle is towed with the front wheels contacting the ground, the drivetrain and related parts may be damaged or electricity generated by the operation of the motor may cause a fire to occur depending on the nature of the damage or malfunction.



While towing

- When towing using a cables or chains, avoid sudden starts, etc. which place excessive stress on the towing eyelets, cables or chains. The towing eyelets, cables or chains may become damaged, broken debris may hit people and cause serious damage.
- Do not turn the power switch off.
 There is a possibility that the steering wheel is locked and cannot be operated.

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the vehicle when towing using a wheel-lift type truck

When raising the vehicle, ensure adequate ground clearance for towing at the opposite end of the raised vehicle. Without adequate clearance, the vehicle could be damaged while being towed.

To prevent body damage when towing with a sling-type truck

Do not tow with a sling-type truck, either from the front or rear.

If you think something is wrong

If you notice any of the following symptoms, your vehicle probably needs adjustment or repair. Contact your Toyota dealer as soon as possible.

Visible symptoms

- Fluid leaks under the vehicle.
 (Water dripping from the air conditioning after use is normal.)
- Flat-looking tires or uneven tire wear
- Engine coolant temperature gauge needle continually points higher than normal.

Audible symptoms

- Changes in exhaust sound
- Excessive tire squeal when cornering
- Strange noises related to the suspension system
- Pinging or other noises related to the hybrid system

Operational symptoms

- Engine missing, stumbling or running roughly
- Appreciable loss of power
- Vehicle pulls heavily to one side when braking
- Vehicle pulls heavily to one side when driving on a level road
- Loss of brake effectiveness, spongy feeling, pedal almost touches the floor

When trouble arises

If a warning light turns on or a warning buzzer sounds

Calmly perform the following actions if any of the warning lights comes on or flashes. If a light comes on or flashes, but then goes off, this does not necessarily indicate a malfunction in the system. However, if this continues to occur, have the vehicle inspected by your Toyota dealer.

Stop the vehicle immediately. Continuing to drive the vehicle may be dangerous.

The following warning indicates a possible problem in the brake system. Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact your Toyota dealer.

Warning light	Warning light/Details
BRAKE	 Brake system warning light (warning buzzer)* Low brake fluid Malfunction in the brake system This light also comes on when the parking brake is not released. If the light turns off after the parking brake is fully released the system is operating normally.

*: Brake system warning buzzer:

When there is a possible problem that could affect braking performance, the warning light will come on and a warning buzzer will sound.

Parking brake engaged warning buzzer:

Parking brake engaged warning buzzer: The buzzer sounds to indicate that the parking brake is still engaged (with the vehicle having reached a speed of 3 mph [5 km/h]).

AVALON_HV_U (OM41457U)

Stop the vehicle immediately.

The following warning indicates the possibility of damage to the vehicle that may lead to an accident. Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact your Toyota dealer.

Warning light	Warning light/Details
Charging system warning light Indicates a malfunction in the vehicle's charging system	
27	Low engine oil pressure warning light Indicates that the engine oil pressure is too low.

Have the vehicle inspected by your Toyota dealer immediately.

Failure to investigate the cause of the following warnings may lead to the system operating abnormally and possibly cause an accident. Have the vehicle inspected by your Toyota dealer immediately.

Warning light	Warning light/Details		
СНЕСК	 Malfunction indicator lamp Indicates a malfunction in: The hybrid system; The electronic engine control system; The electronic throttle control system; or The hybrid transmission control system 		7
*	 SRS warning light Indicates a malfunction in: The SRS airbag system; The front passenger occupant classification system; or The seat belt pretensioner system 		When trouble arises
ABS	 ABS warning light Indicates a malfunction in: The ABS; or The brake assist system 		arises
<u>Θ!</u>	Electric power steering system warning light (warning buzzer) Indicates a malfunction in the EPS (Electric Power Steer- ing) system		

Warning light	Warning light/Details
 PCS (Flashes) (If equipped) (Flashes) (If equipped) (PCS) (Flashes) (If equipped) (If equipped) (PCS) (PCS) (PCS) (Flashes) (If equipped) (PCS) (If equipped) (If equipped) (PCS) (P	
 Slip indicator Indicates a malfunction in: The VSC system; The TRAC system; or The hill-start assist control system The light will flash when the ABS, the VSC, the the hill-start assist control system is operating. 	
Brake system warning light Indicates a malfunction in: • The electronically controlled brake system; or • The regenerative braking system	
AUTO Automatic High Beam indicator light (Flashes) Indicates a malfunction in the Automatic High Beam sy tem.	

Follow the correction procedures.

After taking the specified steps to correct the suspected problem, check that the warning light goes off.

Warning light	Warning light/Details	Correction procedure
	Open door warning light (warning buzzer) ^{*1} Indicates that a door or the trunk is not fully closed	Check that all the doors and the trunk are closed.

Warning light	Warning light/Details	Correction procedure
	Low fuel level warning light Indicates remaining fuel is approximately 2.6 gal. (9.7 L, 2.1 Imp. gal.) or less	Refuel the vehicle.
Å	Seat belt reminder light (warning buzzer)* ² Warns the driver and/or front passenger to fasten their seat belts	Fasten the seat belt. If the front passenger's seat is occupied, the front passenger's seat belt also needs to be fastened to make the warning light (warning buzzer) off.
	Master warning light A buzzer sounds and the warning light comes on and flashes to indicate that the master warning system has detected a malfunc- tion.	→P. 414
	Tire pressure warning light	
(!)	 When the light comes on: Low tire inflation pressure such as Natural causes (→P. 410) Flat tire (→P. 415) 	Adjust the tire inflation pressure to the specified level. The light will turn off after a few minutes. In case the light does not turn off even if the tire inflation pressure is adjusted, have the system checked by your Toyota dealer.
	When the light comes on after blinking for 1 minute: Malfunction in the tire pres- sure warning system	Have the system checked by your Toyota dealer.

When trouble arises

*1: Open door warning buzzer:

A buzzer will sound if the vehicle reaches a speed of 3 mph (5 km/h) or more with any door open.

*2: Driver's seat belt buzzer:

The driver's seat belt buzzer sounds to alert the driver that his or her seat belt is not fastened. Once the power switch is turned to ON mode, the buzzer sounds for 6 seconds. If the vehicle reaches a speed of 12 mph (20 km/h), the buzzer sounds once. If the seat belt is still unfastened after 30 seconds, the buzzer will sound intermittently for 10 seconds. Then, if the seat belt is still unfastened, the buzzer will sound in a different tone for 20 more seconds.

Front passenger's seat belt buzzer:

The front passenger's seat belt buzzer sounds to alert the front passenger that his or her seat belt is not fastened. The buzzer sounds once if the vehicle reaches a speed of 12 mph (20 km/h). If the seat belt is still unfastened after 30 seconds, the buzzer will sound intermittently for 10 seconds. Then, if the seat belt is still unfastened, the buzzer will sound in a different tone for 20 more seconds.

SRS warning light

This warning light system monitors the airbag sensor assembly, front impact sensors, side impact sensors (front), side impact sensors (rear), driver's seat belt buckle switch, front passenger occupant classification system, "AIR BAG ON" indicator light, "AIR BAG OFF" indicator light, front passenger's seat belt buckle switch, seat belt pretensioners, airbags, interconnecting wiring and power sources. (\rightarrow P. 38)

Front passenger detection sensor, seat belt reminder and warning buzzer

If luggage is placed on the front passenger seat, the front passenger detection sensor may cause the warning light to flash and the warning buzzer to sound even if a passenger is not sitting in the seat.

If the malfunction indicator lamp comes on while driving

First check the following:

Is the fuel tank empty?
 If it is, fill the fuel tank immediately.

Is the fuel tank cap loose? If it is, tighten it securely.

The light will go off after several driving trips.

If the light does not go off even after several trips, contact your Toyota dealer as soon as possible.

Electric power steering system warning light (warning buzzer)

When the 12-volt battery charge becomes insufficient of the voltage temporarily drops, the electric power steering system warning light may come on and the warning buzzer may sound.

When the tire pressure warning light comes on

Check the tire inflation pressure and adjust to the appropriate level. Pushing the tire pressure warning reset switch will not turn off the tire pressure warning light.

The tire pressure warning light may come on due to natural causes

The tire pressure warning light may come on due to natural causes such as natural air leaks and tire inflation pressure changes caused by temperature. In this case, adjusting the tire inflation pressure will turn off the warning light (after a few minutes).

When a tire is replaced with a spare tire

The compact spare tire is not equipped with a tire pressure warning valve and transmitter. If a tire goes flat, the tire pressure warning light will not turn off even though the flat tire has been replaced with the spare tire. Replace the spare tire with the repaired tire and adjust the tire inflation pressure. The tire pressure warning light will go off after a few minutes.

Conditions that the tire pressure warning system may not function properly

The tire pressure warning system will be disabled in the following conditions:

(When the condition becomes normal, the system will work properly.)

- If tires not equipped with tire pressure warning valves and transmitters are used
- If the ID code on the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters is not registered in the tire pressure warning computer
- If the tire inflation pressure is 73 psi (500 kPa, 5.1 kgf/cm² or bar) or higher

The tire pressure warning system may be disabled in the following conditions:

(When the condition becomes normal, the system will work properly.)

- If electronic devices or facilities using similar radio wave frequencies are nearby
- If a radio set at a similar frequency is in use in the vehicle
- If a window tint that affects the radio wave signals is installed
- If there is a lot of snow or ice on the vehicle, particularly around the wheels or wheel housings
- If non-genuine Toyota wheels are used. (Even if you use Toyota wheels, the tire pressure warning system may not work properly with some types of tires.)
- If tire chains are used

AVALON_HV_U (OM41457U)

If the tire pressure warning light frequently comes on after blinking for 1 minute

If the tire pressure warning light frequently comes on after blinking for 1 minute when the power switch is turned to ON mode, have it checked by your Toyota dealer.

Warning buzzer

In some cases, the buzzer may not be heard because of noisy place or an audio sound.

CAUTION

If both the ABS and the brake system warning lights remain on

Stop your vehicle in a safe place immediately and contact your Toyota dealer. The vehicle will become extremely unstable during braking, and the ABS system may fail, which could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

Electric power steering warning light (warning buzzer)

When the 12-volt battery charge becomes in sufficient or the voltage temporarily drops, the electric power steering warning light may come on and the warning buzzer may sound.

When the electric power steering system warning light comes on

The steering wheel may become extremely heavy.

If the steering wheel becomes heavier than usual when operating, hold firmly and operate using more force than usual.

If the tire pressure warning light comes on

Be sure to observe the following precautions. Failure to do so could cause a loss of vehicle control and result in death or serious injury.

- Stop your vehicle in a safe place as soon as possible. Adjust the tire inflation pressure immediately.
- If the tire pressure warning light comes on even after tire inflation pressure adjustment, it is probable that you have a flat tire. Check the tires.
 If a tire is flat, change it with the spare tire and have the flat tire repaired by the nearest Toyota dealer.
- Avoid abrupt maneuvering and braking. If the vehicle tires deteriorate, you could lose control of the steering wheel or the brakes.

If a blowout or sudden air leakage should occur

The tire pressure warning system may not activate immediately.

Maintenance of the tires

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label (tire and load information label). (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label [tire and load information label], you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS-tire pressure warning system) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale (tire pressure warning light) when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale (tire pressure warning light) illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly underinflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS (tire pressure warning system) is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale (tire pressure warning light).

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS (tire pressure warning system) malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS (tire pressure warning system) malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale (tire pressure warning light). When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended.

AVALON_HV_U (OM41457U)

TPMS (tire pressure warning system) malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS (tire pressure warning system) from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS (tire pressure warning system) malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS (tire pressure warning system) to continue to function properly.

To ensure the tire pressure warning system operates properly

Do not install tires with different specifications or makers, as the tire pressure warning system may not operate properly.

If a warning message is displayed

The multi-information display shows warnings of system malfunctions, incorrectly performed operations, messages that indicate a need for maintenance and reminder messages. When a message is shown, perform the correction procedure appropriate to the message.

(1) Master warning light

The master warning light also comes on or flashes in order to indicate that a message is currently being displayed on the multiinformation display.



(2) Multi-information display

If any of the warning messages is shown again after its correction procedure has been performed, contact your Toyota dealer.

Warning buzzer

In some cases, the buzzer may not be heard because of noisy place or an audio sound.

If "Hybrid System Overheat/Stop the Vehicle in a Safe Place" is shown

Coping method: \rightarrow P. 436

This message may be displayed when driving under severe operating conditions. (For example, when driving up a long steep hill.)

If you have a flat tire

Your vehicle is equipped with a spare tire. The flat tire can be replaced with the spare tire.

For details about tires: \rightarrow P. 354

A CAUTION

If you have a flat tire

Do not continue driving with a flat tire. Driving even a short distance with a flat tire can damage the tire and the wheel beyond repair, which could result in an accident.

Before jacking up the vehicle

- Stop the vehicle on a hard, flat surface.
- Set the parking brake.
- Shift the shift lever to P.
- Stop the hybrid system.
- Turn on the emergency flashers. (\rightarrow P. 398)



Using the tire jack

Observe the following precautions.

Improper use of the tire jack may cause the vehicle to suddenly fall off the jack, leading to death or serious injury.

- Do not use the tire jack for any purpose other than replacing tires or installing and removing tire chains.
- Only use the tire jack that comes with this vehicle for replacing a flat tire.

Do not use it on other vehicles, and do not use other tire jacks for replacing tires on this vehicle.

- Put the jack properly in its jack point.
- Do not put any part of your body under the vehicle while it is supported by the jack.
- Do not start the hybrid system or drive the vehicle while the vehicle is supported by the jack.
- Do not raise the vehicle while someone is inside.
- When raising the vehicle, do not put an object on or under the jack.
- Do not raise the vehicle to a height greater than that required to replace the tire.
- Use a jack stand if it is necessary to get under the vehicle.
- When lowering the vehicle, make sure that there is no-one near the vehicle. If there are people nearby, warn them vocally before lowering.



AVALON_HV_U (OM41457U)

Taking out the spare tire

- 1 Remove the luggage floor cover. (\rightarrow P. 418)
- 2 Remove the tool tray.



3 Loosen the center fastener that secures the spare tire.



A CAUTION

When storing the spare tire

Be careful not to catch fingers or other body parts between the spare tire and the body of the vehicle.

When trouble arises

Replacing a flat tire

1 Chock the tires.



Flat tire		Wheel chock positions
Front	Left-hand side	Behind the rear right-hand side tire
	Right-hand side	Behind the rear left-hand side tire
Rear	Left-hand side	In front of the front right-hand side tire
	Right-hand side	In front of the front left-hand side tire

2 Slightly loosen the wheel nuts (one turn).



3 Turn the tire jack portion "A" by hand until the notch of the jack is in contact with the jack point.

The jack point guides are located under the rocker panel. They indicate the jack point positions.



4 Raise the vehicle until the tire is slightly raised off the ground.

5 Remove all the wheel nuts and the tire.

When resting the tire on the ground, place the tire so that the wheel design faces up to avoid scratching the wheel surface.





When trouble arises

Replacing a flat tire

 Do not touch the disc wheels or the area around the brakes immediately after the vehicle has been driven.

After the vehicle has been driven the disc wheels and the area around the brakes will be extremely hot. Touching these areas with hands, feet or other body parts while changing a tire, etc. may result in burns.

- Failure to follow these precautions could cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the tire to fall off, resulting in death or serious injury.
 - Have the wheel nuts tightened with a torque wrench to 76 ft•lbf (103 N•m, 10.5 kgf•m) as soon as possible after changing wheels.
 - When installing a tire, only use wheel nuts that have been specifically designed for that wheel.
 - If there are any cracks or deformations in the bolt screws, nut threads or bolt holes of the wheel, have the vehicle inspected by your Toyota dealer.
 - When installing the wheel nuts, be sure to install them with the tapered ends facing inward. (→P. 365)

Installing the spare tire

1 Remove any dirt or foreign matter from the wheel contact surface.

If foreign matter is on the wheel contact surface, the wheel nuts may loosen while the vehicle is in motion, causing the tire to come off.

2 Install the spare tire and loosely tighten each wheel nut by hand by approximately the same amount.

Tighten the wheel nuts until the tapered portion comes into loose contact with the disc wheel seat.

3 Lower the vehicle.

4 Firmly tighten each wheel nut two or three times in the order shown in the illustration.

Tightening torque: 76 ft•lbf (103 N•m, 10.5 kgf•m) Tapered portion





When trouble arises

5 Stow the flat tire, tire jack and all tools.

423

AVALON_HV_U (OM41457U)

The compact spare tire

 The compact spare tire is identified by the label "TEMPORARY USE ONLY" on the tire sidewall.

Use the compact spare tire temporarily, and only in an emergency.

• Make sure to check the tire inflation pressure of the compact spare tire. $(\rightarrow P. 451)$

After completing the tire change

The tire pressure warning system must be reset. (\rightarrow P. 356)

When using the compact spare tire

As the compact spare tire is not equipped with a tire pressure warning valve and transmitter, low inflation pressure of the spare tire will not be indicated by the tire pressure warning system. Also, if you replace the compact spare tire after the tire pressure warning light comes on, the light remains on.

When the compact spare tire is equipped

The vehicle becomes lower when driving with the compact spare tire compared to when driving with standard tires.

If you have a flat front tire on a road covered with snow or ice

Install the compact spare tire on one of the rear wheels of the vehicle. Perform the following steps and fit tire chains to the front tires:

- 1 Replace a rear tire with the compact spare tire.
- 2 Replace the flat front tire with the tire removed from the rear of the vehicle.
- 3 Fit tire chains to the front tires.





A CAUTION

Speed limit when using the compact spare tire

Do not drive at speeds in excess of 50 mph (80 km/h) when a compact spare tire is installed on the vehicle.

The compact spare tire is not designed for driving at high speeds. Failure to observe this precaution may lead to an accident causing death or serious injury.

After using the tools and jack

Before driving, make sure all the tools and jack are securely in place in their storage location to reduce the possibility of personal injury during a collision or sudden braking.

🔨 NOTICE

Driving with tire chains and the compact spare tire

Do not fit tire chains to the compact spare tire.

Tire chains may damage the vehicle body and adversely affect driving performance.

When replacing the tires

When removing or fitting the wheels, tires or the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter, contact your Toyota dealer as the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may be damaged if not handled correctly.

If the hybrid system will not start

Reasons for the hybrid system not starting vary depending on the situation. Check the following and perform the appropriate procedure:

The hybrid system will not start even though the correct starting procedure is being followed. (\rightarrow P. 177)

One of the following may be the cause of the problem:

- The electronic key may not be functioning properly. (\rightarrow P. 431)
- There may not be sufficient fuel in the vehicle's tank. Refuel the vehicle.
- There may be a malfunction in the immobilizer system. (\rightarrow P. 79)
- There may be a malfunction in the steering lock system.
- The hybrid system may be malfunctioning due to an electrical problem such as electronic key battery depletion or a blown fuse. However, depending on the type of malfunction, an interim measure is available to start the hybrid system. (→P. 428)

The interior lights and headlights are dim, or the horn does not sound or sounds at a low volume.

One of the following may be the cause of the problem:

- The 12-volt battery may be discharged. (\rightarrow P. 432)
- The 12-volt battery terminal connections may be loose or corroded.

The interior lights and headlights do not turn on, or the horn does not sound.

One of the following may be the cause of the problem:

- One or both of the 12-volt battery terminals may be disconnected.
- The 12-volt battery may be discharged. (\rightarrow P. 432)

Contact your Toyota dealer if the problem cannot be repaired, or if repair procedures are unknown.

Emergency start function

When the hybrid system does not start, the following steps can be used as an interim measure to start the hybrid system if the power switch is functioning normally:

- 1 Set the parking brake.
- 2 Shift the shift lever to P.
- 3 Turn the power switch to ACCESSORY mode.
- 4 Press and hold the power switch for about 15 seconds while depressing the brake pedal firmly.

Even if the hybrid system can be started using the above steps, the system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by your Toyota dealer.

If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P

If the shift lever cannot be shifted with your foot on the brake pedal, there may be a problem with the shift lock system (a system to prevent accidental operation of the shift lever). Have the vehicle inspected by your Toyota dealer immediately. The following steps may be used as an emergency measure to

ensure that the shift lever can be shifted:

- 1 Set the parking brake.
- 2 Turn the power switch to ACCESSORY mode.
- 3 Depress the brake pedal.
- 4 Pry the cover up with a flathead screwdriver or equivalent tool.

To prevent damage to the cover, cover the tip of the screwdriver with a rag.

- CTYTZAX019
- 5 Press the shift lock override button.

The shift lever can be shifted while the button is pressed.



If the electronic key does not operate properly

If communication between the electronic key and vehicle is interrupted (\rightarrow P. 120) or the electronic key cannot be used because the battery is depleted, the smart key system and wireless remote control cannot be used. In such cases, the doors and trunk can be opened and the hybrid system can be started by following the procedure below.

Locking and unlocking the doors and unlocking the trunk

Doors

Use the mechanical key $(\rightarrow P. 108)$ in order to perform the following operations:

- 1 Locks all the doors
- (2) Unlocks the door

Turning the key rearward unlocks the driver's door. Turning the key once again within 5 seconds unlocks the other doors.



Trunk

→P. 134

Starting the hybrid system

1 Ensure that the shift lever is in P and depress the brake pedal.

2 Touch the Toyota emblem side of the electronic key to the power switch.

The power switch will turn to ON mode.

When the smart key system is deactivated in customization setting, the power switch will turn to ACCESSORY mode.



3 Firmly depress the brake pedal.

A message indicating how to start the hybrid system will be displayed on the multi-information display.

4 Press the power switch.

In the event that the hybrid system still cannot be started, contact your Toyota dealer.

Stopping the hybrid system

Shift the shift lever to P and press the power switch as you normally do when stopping the hybrid system.

Replacing the key battery

As the above procedure is a temporary measure, it is recommended that the electronic key battery be replaced immediately when the battery is depleted. $(\rightarrow P. 369)$

Changing power switch modes

Release the brake pedal and press the power switch in step 3 above. The hybrid system does not start and modes will be changed each time the switch is pressed.(\rightarrow P. 178)

When the electronic key does not work properly

 Make sure that the smart key system has not been deactivated in the customization setting. If it is off, turn the function on. (Customizable features →P. 469)

• Check if battery-saving mode is set. If it is set, cancel the function. $(\rightarrow P. 119)$

If the 12-volt battery is discharged

The following procedures may be used to start the hybrid system if the 12-volt battery is discharged.

You can also call your Toyota dealer or a qualified repair shop.

If you have a set of jumper (or booster) cables and a second vehicle with a 12-volt battery, you can jump start your vehicle by following the steps below.

1 Open the trunk lid and remove the 12-volt battery cover.

In the event that the trunk opener cannot be used, use the loop of wire to unlock the trunk. (\rightarrow P. 134)



2 Connect the jumper cables according to the following procedure:



- (1) Connect a positive jumper cable clamp to the positive (+) battery terminal on your vehicle.
- ② Connect the clamp on the other end of the positive cable to the positive (+) battery terminal on the second vehicle.
- (3) Connect a negative cable clamp to the negative (-) battery terminal on the second vehicle.
- (4) Connect the clamp at the other end of the negative cable to a solid, stationary, unpainted metallic point away from the 12-volt battery and any moving parts, as shown in the illustration.
- 3 Start the engine of the second vehicle. Increase the engine speed slightly and maintain at that level for approximately 5 minutes to recharge the 12-volt battery of your vehicle.
- 4 Open and close any of the doors of your vehicle with the power switch off.
- 5 Maintain the engine speed of the second vehicle and start the hybrid system of your vehicle by turning the power switch to ON mode.
- 6 Make sure the "READY" indicator comes on. If the indicator does not come on, contact your Toyota dealer.
- 7 Once the hybrid system has started, remove the jumper cables in the exact reverse order from which they were connected.

Once the hybrid system starts, have the vehicle inspected at your Toyota dealer as soon as possible.

Starting the hybrid system when the 12-volt battery is discharged The hybrid system cannot be started by push-starting.

To prevent 12-volt battery discharge

- Turn off the headlights and the audio system while the hybrid system is off.
- Turn off any unnecessary electrical components when the vehicle is running at a low speed for an extended period, such as in heavy traffic.

Charging the 12-volt battery

The electricity stored in the 12-volt battery will discharge gradually even when the vehicle is not in use, due to natural discharge and the draining effects of certain electrical appliances. If the vehicle is left for a long time, the 12-volt battery may discharge, and the hybrid system may be unable to start. (The 12-volt battery recharges automatically while the hybrid system is operating.)

434 7-2. Steps to take in an emergency

When recharging or replacing the 12-volt battery

- In some cases, it may not be possible to unlock the doors using the smart key system when the 12-volt battery is discharged. Use the wireless remote control or the mechanical key to lock or unlock the doors.
- The hybrid system may not start on the first attempt after the 12-volt battery has recharged but will start normally after the second attempt. This is not a malfunction.
- The power switch mode is memorized by the vehicle. When the 12-volt battery is reconnected, the system will return to the mode it was in before the 12-volt battery was discharged. Before disconnecting the 12-volt battery, turn the power switch off.

If you are unsure what mode the power switch was in before the 12-volt battery discharged, be especially careful when reconnecting the 12-volt battery.

 Make sure that the key is not inside the vehicle when recharging or replacing the 12-volt battery. The key may be locked in the vehicle if the alarm is activated. (→P. 82)

CAUTION

Avoiding 12-volt battery fires or explosions

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidentally igniting the flammable gas that may be emitted from the 12-volt battery:

- Make sure each jumper cable is connected to the correct terminal and that it is not unintentionally in contact with any other than the intended terminal.
- Do not allow the other end of the jumper cable connected to the "+" terminal to come into contact with any other parts or metal surfaces in the area, such as brackets or unpainted metal.
- Do not allow the + and clamps of the jumper cables to come into contact with each other.
- Do not smoke, use matches, cigarette lighters or allow open flame near the 12-volt battery.

AVALON_HV_U (OM41457U)

12-volt battery precautions

The 12-volt battery contains poisonous and corrosive acidic electrolyte, while related parts contain lead and lead compounds. Observe the following precautions when handling the 12-volt battery:

- When working with the 12-volt battery, always wear safety glasses and take care not to allow any 12-volt battery fluids (acid) to come into contact with skin, clothing or the vehicle body.
- Do not lean over the 12-volt battery.
- In the event that 12-volt battery fluid comes into contact with the skin or eyes, immediately wash the affected area with water and seek medical attention.
 - Place a wet sponge or cloth over the affected area until medical attention can be received.
- Always wash your hands after handling the 12-volt battery support, terminals, and other battery-related parts.
- Do not allow children near the 12-volt battery.

After recharging the 12-volt battery

Have the 12-volt battery inspected at your Toyota dealer as soon as possible.

If the 12-volt battery is deteriorating, continued use may cause the 12-volt battery to emit a malodorous gas, which may be detrimental to the health of passengers.

When replacing the 12-volt battery

→P. 353

If your vehicle overheats

The following may indicate that your vehicle is overheating:

The engine coolant temperature gauge enters the red zone or a loss of power is experienced. (For example, the vehicle speed does not increase.)

"Hybrid System Overheat/Stop the Vehicle in a Safe Place" is shown on the multi-information display.

Steam comes out from under the hood.

Correction procedures

- If the needle of the engine coolant temperature gauge enters the red zone
- 1 Stop the vehicle in a safe place and turn off the air conditioning system, and then stop the hybrid system.
- 2 If you see steam:

Carefully lift the hood after the steam subsides.

If you do not see steam: Carefully lift the hood.

- 3 After the hybrid system has cooled down sufficiently, inspect the hoses and radiator core (radiator) for any leaks.
- (1) Radiator
- (2) Cooling fan

If a large amount of coolant leaks, immediately contact your Toyota dealer.



7-2. Steps to take in an emergency

- 4 The coolant level is satisfactory if it is between the "F" and "L" lines on the reservoir.
- (1) Reservoir
- (2) "F" line
- (3) "L" line
- (4) Radiator cap
- 5 Add coolant if necessary. Water can be used in an emergency if coolant is unavailable.





6 Start the hybrid system and turn the air conditioning system on to check that the radiator cooling fan operates and to check for coolant leaks from the radiator or hoses.

The fan operates when the air conditioning system is turned on immediately after a cold start. Confirm that the fan is operating by checking the fan sound and air flow. If it is difficult to check these, turn the air conditioning system on and off repeatedly.

(The fan may not operate in freezing temperatures.)

7 If the fan is not operating:

Stop the hybrid system immediately and contact your Toyota dealer.

If the fan is operating:

Have the vehicle inspected at the nearest Toyota dealer.

437

438 7-2. Steps to take in an emergency

If "Hybrid System Overheat/Stop the Vehicle in a Safe Place" is shown on the multi-information display

- 1 Stop the vehicle in a safe place.
- 2 Stop the hybrid system and carefully lift the hood.
- 3 After the hybrid system has cooled down, inspect the hoses and radiator core (radiator) for any leaks.
- (1) Radiator
- (2) Cooling fan

If a large amount of coolant leaks, immediately contact your Toyota dealer

4 The coolant level is satisfactory if it is between the "FULL" and "LOW" lines on the reservoir.

- (1) Reservoir
- 2 "FULL" line
- ③ "LOW" line
- 5 Add coolant if necessary.

Water can be used in an emergency if coolant is unavailable.







6 Start the hybrid system and check for the multi-information display.

If the message does not disappear:

Stop the hybrid system and contact your Toyota dealer.

If the message is not displayed:

Have the vehicle inspected at the nearest Toyota dealer.

When inspecting under the hood of your vehicle

Observe the following precautions.

Failure to do so may result in serious injury such as burns.

- If steam is seen coming from under the hood, do not open the hood until the steam has subsided. The engine compartment may be very hot.
- After the hybrid system has been turned off, check that the indicator on the "POWER" switch and the "READY" indicator are off.

When the hybrid system is operating, the gasoline engine may automatically start, or the cooling fan may suddenly operate even if the gasoline engine stops. Do not touch or approach rotating parts such as the fan, which may lead to fingers or clothing (especially a tie, a scarf or a muffler) getting caught, resulting in serious injury.

 Do not loosen the radiator cap or the coolant reservoir caps while the hybrid system and radiator are hot.
 High temperature steam or coolant could spray out.



When adding engine/power control unit coolant

Add coolant slowly after the hybrid system has cooled down sufficiently. Adding cool coolant to a hot hybrid system too quickly can cause damage to the hybrid system.

To prevent damage to the cooling system

Observe the following precautions:

- Avoid contaminating the coolant with foreign matter (such as sand or dust etc.).
- Do not use any coolant additives.

439

440 7-2. Steps to take in an emergency

If the vehicle becomes stuck

Carry out the following procedures if the tires spin or the vehicle becomes stuck in mud, dirt or snow:

- 1 Stop the hybrid system. Set the parking brake and shift the shift lever to P.
- 2 Remove the mud, snow or sand from around the front wheels.
- 3 Place wood, stones or some other material under the front wheels to help provide traction.
- 4 Restart the hybrid system.
- 5 Shift the shift lever to D or R and release the parking brake. Then, while exercising caution, depress the accelerator pedal.

When it is difficult to free the vehicle

Press k to turn off TRAC.



A CAUTION

When attempting to free a stuck vehicle

If you choose to push the vehicle back and forth to free it, make sure the surrounding area is clear to avoid striking other vehicles, objects or people. The vehicle may also lunge forward or lunge back suddenly as it becomes free. Use extreme caution.

When shifting the shift lever

Be careful not to shift the shift lever with the accelerator pedal depressed. This may lead to unexpected rapid acceleration of the vehicle that may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury. 7-2. Steps to take in an emergency

NOTICE To avoid damaging the transmission and other components Avoid spinning the front wheels and depressing the accelerator pedal more than necessary. If the vehicle remains stuck even after these procedures are performed, the vehicle may require towing to be freed.

441

AVALON_HV_U (OM41457U)

AVALON_HV_U (OM41457U)

8

8-1. Specifications Maintenance data (fuel, oil level, etc.) 444 Fuel information 453 Tire information 456 8-2. Customization Customizable features 469 8-3. Items to initialize Items to initialize 475

Vehicle specifications

443

Maintenance data (fuel, oil level, etc.)

Dimensions and weight

Overall length		195.3 in. (4960 mm)
Overall width		72.2 in. (1835 mm)
Overall height*		57.5 in. (1460 mm)
Wheelbase		111.0 in. (2820 mm)
Tread*	Front	62.6 in. (1590 mm)
	Rear	62.2 in. (1580 mm)
Vehicle capacity weight (Occupants + luggage)		930 lb. (420 kg)

*: Unladen vehicle

Vehicle identification

Vehicle identification number

The vehicle identification number (VIN) is the legal identifier for your vehicle. This is the primary identification number for your Toyota. It is used in registering the ownership of your vehicle.

This number is located on the top left of the instrument panel.



This number is also on the Certification Label.



Engine number

The engine number is stamped on the engine block as shown.



Vehicle specifications

446 8-1. Specifications

Engine

-	
Model	2.5 L 4-cylinder (2AR-FXE)
Туре	4-cylinder in line, 4-cycle, gasoline
Bore and stroke	3.54×3.86 in. (90.0 × 98.0 mm)
Displacement	152.2 cu. in. (2494 cm ³)
Valve clearance (engine cold)	Automatic adjustment

Fuel

Fuel type	Unleaded gasoline only
Octane Rating	87 (Research Octane Number 91) or higher
Fuel tank capacity (Reference)	17.0 gal. (64.35 L, 14.2 lmp. gal.)

Electric motor (traction motor)

Туре	Permanent magnet synchronous motor
Maximum output	105 kW
Maximum torque	199 ft•lbf (270 N•m, 27.5 kgf•m)

Hybrid battery (traction battery)

Туре	Nickel-Metal hydride battery
Voltage	7.2 V/module
Capacity	6.5 Ah (3HR)
Quantity	34 modules
Overall voltage	244.8 V

P	Lubrication system		
	Oil capacity Drain and refill (Reference [*])		
	With filter Without filter	4.6 qt. (4.4 L, 3.9 Imp. qt.) 4.2 qt. (4.0 L, 3.5 Imp. qt.)	

*: The engine oil capacity is a reference quantity to be used when changing the engine oil. Warm up the engine and turn off the hybrid system, wait more than 5 minutes, and check the oil level on the dipstick.

Engine oil selection

"Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" is used in your Toyota vehicle. Use Toyota approved "Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" or equivalent to satisfy the following grade and viscosity.

Oil grade: ILSAC GF-5 multigrade engine oil

Recommended viscosity: SAE 0W-20

SAE 0W-20 is the best choice for good fuel economy and good starting in cold weather.

If SAE 0W-20 is not available, SAE 5W-20 oil may be used. However, it must be replaced with SAE 0W-20 at the next oil change.

How to read oil container label

The International Lubricant Specification Advisory Committee (ILSAC) Certification Mark is added to some oil containers to help you select the oil you should use.





8-1. Specifications **449**

Cooling system Gasoline engine 7.6 qt. (7.2 L, 6.3 Imp. qt.) Power control unit 3.4 qt. (3.2 L, 2.8 Imp. qt.)

l		Use either of the following: • "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" • Similar high-quality ethylene glycol-based
Coolant type)	non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite, and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology
		Do not use plain water alone.

Ignition system

Spark plug	
Make	DENSO FK16HR-A8
Gap	0.031 in. (0.8 mm)

Iridium-tipped spark plugs

Use only iridium-tipped spark plugs. Do not adjust the spark plug gap.

Electrical system

(20°C):	12.6 — 12.8 V Fully charged 12.2 — 12.4 V Half charged 11.8 — 12.0 V Discharged (Voltage is checked 20 minutes after the hybrid system and all lights are turned off.)
Charging rates	5 A max.

Hybrid transaxle

Fluid capacity*	3.9 qt. (3.7 L, 3.3 Imp. qt.)
Fluid type	Toyota Genuine ATF WS

*: The fluid capacity is the quantity of reference. If replacement is necessary, contact your Toyota dealer.

Hybrid transmission fluid type

Using transmission fluid other than "Toyota Genuine ATF WS" may cause deterioration in shift quality, locking up of your transmission accompanied by vibration, and ultimately damage the transmission of your vehicle.

Brakes

Pedal clearance ^{*1}	3.62 in. (92 mm) Min.
Pedal free play	0.04 — 0.24 in. (1.0 — 6.0 mm)
Brake pad wear limit	0.04 in. (1.0 mm)
Parking brake lining wear limit	0.04 in. (1.0 mm)
Parking brake pedal travel*2	7 — 10 clicks
Fluid type	SAE J1703 or FMVSS No.116 DOT 3

*1: Minimum pedal clearance when depressed with a force of 110 lbf (490 N, 50 kgf) while the hybrid system is operating

*2: Parking brake pedal travel when depressed with a force of 67 lbf (300 N, 30.6 kgf).

Steering

Free play Less than 1.2 in. (30 mm)

Tires and wheels

Tire size	P215/55R17 93V, T155/70D17 110M
Tire inflation pressure (Recommended cold tire inflation pressure)	Front 33 psi (230 kPa, 2.3 kgf/cm ² or bar) Rear 33 psi (230 kPa, 2.3 kgf/cm ² or bar) Spare 60 psi (420 kPa, 4.2 kgf/cm ² or bar)
Wheel size	17 \times 7 J, 17 \times 4 T (compact spare)
Wheel nut torque	76 ft•lbf (103 N•m, 10.5 kgf•m)

3

452 8-1. Specifications

Light bulbs

	Light bulbs	Bulb No.	W	Туре
Exterior	Headlights Low beam (discharge bulbs) Low beam (halogen bulbs) High beam	9005 9005	35 60 60	A B C
	Fog lights*		55	D
	Front turn signal/parking lights	7444NA	28/8	E
	Side marker lights	W5W	5	F
	Side turn signal lights	WY5W	5	E
	Rear turn signal lights	921	16	F
	Back-up lights	921	16	F
	License plate lights	W5W	5	F
Interior	Interior/front personal lights	W6W	6	F
	Interior/rear personal lights		8	F
	Vanity lights	7065	1.4	G
	Door courtesy lights	168	5	F
	Trunk light	194	3.8	F

A: D4S discharge bulbs

B: HB3L+ halogen bulbs

C: HB3 halogen bulbs

D: H11 halogen bulbs

E: Wedge base bulbs (amber)

F: Wedge base bulbs (clear)

G: Double end bulbs

*: If equipped

Fuel information

You must only use unleaded gasoline in your vehicle.

Select unleaded gasoline with an octane rating of 87 (Research Octane Number 91) or higher required for optimum engine performance. Use of unleaded gasoline with an octane rating lower than 87 may result in engine knocking and significantly reduced performance. Persistent knocking can lead to engine damage and should be corrected by refueling with higher octane unleaded gasoline.

At minimum, the gasoline you use should meet the specifications of ASTM D4814 in the U.S.A..

Fuel tank opening for unleaded gasoline

To help prevent incorrect fueling, your vehicle has a fuel tank opening that only accommodates the special nozzle on unleaded fuel pumps.

Gasoline quality

In very few cases, driveability problems may be caused by the brand of gasoline you are using. If driveability problems persist, try changing the brand of gasoline. If this does not correct the problem, consult your Toyota dealer.

Gasoline quality standards

 Automotive manufacturers in the U.S.A., Europe and Japan have developed a specification for fuel quality called the World-Wide Fuel Charter (WWFC), which is expected to be applied worldwide.

- The WWFC consists of four categories that are based on required emission levels. In the U.S., category 4 has been adopted.
- The WWFC improves air quality by lowering emissions in vehicle fleets, and improves customer satisfaction through better performance.

- Recommendation of the use of gasoline containing detergent additives
 - Toyota recommends the use of gasoline that contains detergent additives to avoid the build-up of engine deposits.
 - All gasoline sold in the U.S.A. contains minimum detergent additives to clean and/or keep clean intake systems, per EPA's lowest additives concentration program.
 - Toyota strongly recommends the use of Top Tier Detergent Gasoline. For more information on Top Tier Detergent Gasoline and a list of marketers, please go to the official website www.toptiergas.com.

Recommendation of the use of cleaner burning gasoline

Cleaner burning gasoline, including reformulated gasoline that contains oxygenates such as ethanol or MTBE (Methyl Tertiary Butyl Ether) is available in many areas.

Toyota recommends the use of cleaner burning gasoline and appropriately blended reformulated gasoline. These types of gasoline provide excellent vehicle performance, reduce vehicle emissions and improve air quality.

Non-recommendation of the use of blended gasoline

• Use only gasoline containing up to 15% ethanol.

DO NOT use any flex-fuel or gasoline that could contain more than 15% ethanol, including from any pump labeled E30, E50, E85 (which are only some examples of fuel containing more than 15% ethanol).



- If you use gasohol in your vehicle, be sure that it has an octane rating no lower than 87.
- Toyota does not recommend the use of gasoline containing methanol.

Some gasoline contains an octane enhancing additive called MMT (Methylcyclopentadienyl Manganese Tricarbonyl).

Toyota does not recommend the use of gasoline that contains MMT. If fuel containing MMT is used, your emission control system may be adversely affected.

The malfunction indicator lamp on the instrument cluster may come on. If this happens, contact your Toyota dealer for service.

If your engine knocks

Consult your Toyota dealer.

 You may occasionally notice light knocking for a short time while accelerating or driving uphill. This is normal and there is no need for concern.

NOTICE

Notice on fuel quality

- Do not use improper fuels. If improper fuels are used, the engine will be damaged.
- Do not use leaded gasoline.
 Leaded gasoline can cause damage to your vehicle's three-way catalytic converters causing the emission control system to malfunction.
- Do not use gasohol other than the type previously stated.
 Other gasohol may cause fuel system damage or vehicle performance problems.
- Using unleaded gasoline with an octane number or rating lower than the level previously stated will cause persistent heavy knocking. At worst, this will lead to engine damage.

Fuel-related poor driveability

If poor driveability is encountered after using a different type of fuel (poor hot starting, vaporization, engine knocking, etc.), discontinue the use of that type of fuel.

When refueling with gasohol

Take care not to spill gasohol. It can damage your vehicle's paint.

456 8-1. Specifications

Tire information

Typical tire symbols

► Full-size tire



Compact spare tire



457

- (1) Tire size (→P. 459)
- (2) DOT and Tire Identification Number (TIN) (\rightarrow P. 458)
- ③ Uniform tire quality grading

For details, see "Uniform Tire Quality Grading" that follows.

- (4) Location of treadwear indicators (\rightarrow P. 354)
- (5) Tire ply composition and materials

Plies are layers of rubber-coated parallel cords. Cords are the strands which form the plies in a tire.

(6) Radial tires or bias-ply tires

A radial tire has "RADIAL" on the sidewall. A tire not marked "RADIAL" is a bias-ply tire.

(7) TUBELESS or TUBE TYPE

A tubeless tire does not have a tube and air is directly put into the tire. A tube type tire has a tube inside the tire and the tube maintains the air pressure.

- (8) Load limit at maximum cold tire inflation pressure (\rightarrow P. 463)
- (9) Maximum cold tire inflation pressure (\rightarrow P. 463)

This means the pressure to which a tire may be inflated.

(10) Summer tires or all season tires (\rightarrow P. 358)

An all season tire has "M+S" on the sidewall. A tire not marked "M+S" is a summer tire.

(11) "TEMPORARY USE ONLY"

A compact spare tire is identified by the phrase "TEMPORARY USE ONLY" molded on its sidewall. This tire is designed for temporary emergency use only.

Vehicle specifications

Typical DOT and Tire Identification Number (TIN)

- (1) DOT symbol*
- (2) Tire Identification Number (TIN)
- (3) Tire manufacturer's identification mark
- (4) Tire size code
- (5) Manufacturer's optional tire type code (3 or 4 letters)
- (6) Manufacturing week
- (7) Manufacturing year
 - *: The DOT symbol certifies that the tire conforms to applicable Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards.



8-1. Specifications **459**

Tire size

Typical tire size information

The illustration indicates typical tire size.

- Tire use
 (P = Passenger car, T = Temporary use)
- (2) Section width (millimeters)
- (3) Aspect ratio(tire height to section width)
- ④ Tire construction code(R = Radial, D = Diagonal)
- (5) Wheel diameter (inches)
- 6 Load index(2 digits or 3 digits)
- ⑦ Speed symbol (alphabet with one letter)

Tire dimensions

- 1 Section width
- 2 Tire height
- ③ Wheel diameter





8

Vehicle specifications

Tire section names

- ① Bead
- 2 Sidewall
- ③ Shoulder
- (4) Tread
- (5) Belt
- 6 Inner liner
- ⑦ Reinforcing rubber
- (8) Carcass
- (9) Rim lines
- (10) Bead wires
- (1) Chafer



461

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

This information has been prepared in accordance with regulations issued by the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration of the U.S. Department of Transportation.

It provides the purchasers and/or prospective purchasers of Toyota vehicles with information on uniform tire quality grading.

Your Toyota dealer will help answer any questions you may have as you read this information.

DOT quality grades

All passenger vehicle tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades. Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width.

For example: Treadwear 200 Traction AA Temperature A

Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course.

For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and a half (1 - 1/2) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.

The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use. Performance may differ significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction AA, A, B, C

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B and C, and they represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete.

A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

Warning: The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on braking (straight ahead) traction tests and does not include cornering (turning) traction.

Temperature A, B, C

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure.

Grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109.

Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

Warning: The temperature grades of a tire assume that it is properly inflated and not overloaded.

Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

8-1. Specifications

Glossary of tire terminology			
Tire related term	Meaning		
Cold tire inflation pres- sure	Tire pressure when the vehicle has been parked for three hours or more, or has not been driven more than 1 mile or 1.5 km under that condition		
Maximum inflation pressure	The maximum cold inflated pressure to which a tire may be inflated, shown on the sidewall of the tire		
Recommended infla- tion pressure	Cold tire inflation pressure recommended by a manufacturer		
Accessory weight	The combined weight (in excess of those stan- dard items which may be replaced) of hybrid transmission, power steering, power brakes, power windows, power seats, radio and heater, to the extent that these items are avail- able as factory-installed equipment (whether installed or not)		
Curb weight	The weight of a motor vehicle with standard equipment, including the maximum capacity of fuel, oil and coolant, and if so equipped, air conditioning and additional weight optional engine		
Maximum loaded vehi- cle weight	The sum of: (a) Curb weight (b) Accessory weight (c) Vehicle capacity weight (d) Production options weight		
Normal occupant weight	150 lb. (68 kg) times the number of occupants specified in the second column of Table 1* that follows		
Occupant distribution	Distribution of occupants in a vehicle as speci- fied in the third column of Table 1* below		

Glossary of tire terminology

AVALON_HV_U (OM41457U)

463

464 8-1. Specifications

Tire related term	Meaning	
Production options weight	The combined weight of installed regular pro- duction options weighing over 5 lb. (2.3 kg) in excess of the standard items which they replace, not previously considered in curb weight or accessory weight, including heavy duty brakes, ride levelers, roof rack, heavy duty 12-volt battery, and special trim	
Rim	A metal support for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated	
Rim diameter (Wheel diameter)	Nominal diameter of the bead seat	
Rim size designation	Rim diameter and width	
Rim type designation	The industry manufacturer's designation for a rim by style or code	
Rim width	Nominal distance between rim flanges	
Vehicle capacity weight (Total load capacity)	The rated cargo and luggage load plus 150 lb. (68 kg) times the vehicle's designated seating capacity	
Vehicle maximum load on the tire	The load on an individual tire that is deter- mined by distributing to each axle its share of the maximum loaded vehicle weight, and dividing by two	
Vehicle normal load on the tire	The load on an individual tire that is deter- mined by distributing to each axle its share of curb weight, accessory weight, and normal occupant weight (distributed in accordance with Table 1* below), and dividing by two	
Weather side	The surface area of the rim not covered by the inflated tire	
Bead	The part of the tire that is made of steel wires, wrapped or reinforced by ply cords and that is shaped to fit the rim	
Bead separation	A breakdown of the bond between components in the bead	

8-1. Specifications

Tire related term	Meaning	
Bias ply tire	A pneumatic tire in which the ply cords that extend to the beads are laid at alternate angles substantially less than 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread	
Carcass	The tire structure, except tread and sidewal rubber which, when inflated, bears the load	
Chunking	The breaking away of pieces of the tread or sidewall	
Cord	The strands forming the plies in the tire	
Cord separation	The parting of cords from adjacent rubber compounds	
Cracking	Any parting within the tread, sidewall, or inner- liner of the tire extending to cord material	
СТ	A pneumatic tire with an inverted flange tire and rim system in which the rim is designed with rim flanges pointed radially inward and the tire is designed to fit on the underside of the rim in a manner that encloses the rim flanges inside the air cavity of the tire	
Extra load tire	A tire designed to operate at higher loads and at higher inflation pressures than the corre- sponding standard tire	
Groove	The space between two adjacent tread ribs	
Innerliner	The layer(s) forming the inside surface of a tubeless tire that contains the inflating medium within the tire	
Innerliner separation	The parting of the innerliner from cord materia in the carcass	
Intended outboard sidewall	 (a) The sidewall that contains a whitewall, bears white lettering, or bears manufacturer, brand, and/or model name molding that is higher or deeper than the same molding on the other sidewall of the tire, or (b) The outward facing sidewall of an asymmetrical tire that has a particular side that must always face outward when mounted on a vehicle 	

Vehicle specifications

AVALON_HV_U (OM41457U)

465

466 8-1. Specifications

Tire related term	Meaning	
Light truck (LT) tire	A tire designated by its manufacturer as pri- marily intended for use on lightweight trucks or multipurpose passenger vehicles	
Load rating	The maximum load that a tire is rated to carry for a given inflation pressure	
Maximum load rating	The load rating for a tire at the maximum per- missible inflation pressure for that tire	
Maximum permissible inflation pressure	The maximum cold inflation pressure to which a tire may be inflated	
Measuring rim	The rim on which a tire is fitted for physical dimension requirements	
Open splice	Any parting at any junction of tread, sidewall, or innerliner that extends to cord material	
Outer diameter	The overall diameter of an inflated new tire	
Overall width	The linear distance between the exteriors of the sidewalls of an inflated tire, including ele- vations due to labeling, decorations, or protec- tive bands or ribs	
Passenger car tire A tire intended for use on passenger of multipurpose passenger vehicles, and tru that have a gross vehicle weight ra (GVWR) of 10,000 lb. or less.		
Ply	A layer of rubber-coated parallel cords	
Ply separation	A parting of rubber compound between adja- cent plies	
Pneumatic tire	A mechanical device made of rubber, chemi- cals, fabric and steel or other materials, that, when mounted on an automotive wheel, pro- vides the traction and contains the gas or fluid that sustains the load	
Radial ply tire	A pneumatic tire in which the ply cords that extend to the beads are laid at substantially 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread	
Reinforced tire	A tire designed to operate at higher loads and at higher inflation pressures than the corre- sponding standard tire	

8-1. Specifications

467

Tire related term	Meaning	
Section width	The linear distance between the exteriors of the sidewalls of an inflated tire, excluding ele- vations due to labeling, decoration, or protec- tive bands	
Sidewall	That portion of a tire between the tread and bead	
Sidewall separation	The parting of the rubber compound from the cord material in the sidewall	
Snow tire	A tire that attains a traction index equal to or greater than 110, compared to the ASTM E- 1136 Standard Reference Test Tire, when using the snow traction test as described in ASTM F-1805-00, Standard Test Method for Single Wheel Driving Traction in a Straight Line on Snow-and Ice-Covered Surfaces, and	
	which is marked with an Alpine Symbol (🙀) on at least one sidewall	
Test rim The rim on which a tire is fitted for testin may be any rim listed as appropriate friend with that tire		
Tread	That portion of a tire that comes into contact with the road	
Tread rib	A tread section running circumferentially around a tire	
Tread separation	Pulling away of the tread from the tire carcass	
Treadwear indicators (TWI)	The projections within the principal grooves designed to give a visual indication of the degrees of wear of the tread	
Wheel-holding fixture	The fixture used to hold the wheel and tire assembly securely during testing	

*: Table 1 — Occupant loading and distribution for vehicle normal load for various designated seating capacities

AVALON_HV_U (OM41457U)

468 8-1. Specifications

Designated seating capacity, Number of occupants	Vehicle normal load, Number of occupants	Occupant distribution in a normally loaded vehi- cle
2 through 4	2	2 in front
5 through 10	3	2 in front, 1 in second seat
11 through 15	5	2 in front, 1 in second seat, 1 in third seat, 1 in fourth seat
16 through 20	7	2 in front, 2 in second seat, 2 in third seat, 1 in fourth seat
Customizable features

Your vehicle includes a variety of electronic features that can be personalized to suit your preferences. The settings of these features can be changed on the audio system screen or at your Toyota dealer.

Some function settings are changed simultaneously with other functions being customized. Contact your Toyota dealer for further details.

Customizing vehicle features

It is possible to customize certain vehicle features using the audio system.

1 Press the "APPS" button.

2 Select "Setup" on the "Apps" screen and select "Vehicle".

Various setting can be changed. Refer to the list of settings that can be changed for details.

Customizable Features

 Vehicles with an audio system: Settings that can be changed using the audio system

② Settings that can be changed by your Toyota dealer Definition of symbols: O = Available, — = Not available

8

AVALON_HV_U (OM41457U)

470	8-2. Customization
470	8-2. Customization

Item	Function	Default set- ting	Customized setting	1	2
	Operation signal (Emergency flashers)	On	Off	0	0
	Operation signal (Buzzer)	On	Off	—	0
Smart key system	Operation buzzer vol- ume	Level 5	Off to level 7	0	0
and wire- less remote	Time elapsed before		Off		
control (\rightarrow P. 111, 126)	automatic door lock function is activated if door is not opened after	60 seconds	30 seconds	0	0
	being unlocked		120 seconds		
	Open door warning buzzer	On	Off		0
Smart key	Smart key system	On	Off	_	0
system (→P. 111)	Number of permissible times of continuous smart lock	Twice	Unlimited	_	0
	Wireless remote control	On	Off		0
Wireless	Unlocking operation	Driver's door unlocked in one step, all doors unlocked in two steps	All doors unlocked in one step.	0	0
remote control	Panic function	On	Off	—	0
(→P. 126)			Off		
			Press twice	- -	
	Trunk unlocking opera- tion	Press and hold (short)	One short press		0
			Press and hold (long)		

8-2. Customization

Item	Function	Default set- ting	Customized setting	1	2
	Unlocking using a key	Driver's door unlocked in one step, all doors unlocked in two steps	All doors unlocked in one step.		0
Door lock	Speed-detecting auto- matic door lock function	Off	On	0	0
(→P. 129)	Opening driver's door unlocks all doors	Off	On	0	0
	Shifting gears to P unlocks all doors.	On	Off	0	0
	Shifting gears to posi- tion other than P locks all doors.	On	Off	0	0
Trunk (→P. 132)	Trunk opener main switch	Activated	Deactivated	_	0
Driving	Driver's seat movement	Full	Off	_ 0 0	
position memory*	when exiting the vehicle	T GII	Partial	Ŭ	Ũ
(→P. 137, 141)	Doors linked to the driv- ing position memory recall function	Driver's door	All doors		0
	Time elapsed before the		30 seconds		
Power switch (→P. 177)	power switch related messages on the multi- information display turn off	60 seconds	600 seconds		0
		4			
Turn signal	Times of flashing of the		5		
lever	lane change signal flash-	3	6 —	—	0
(→P. 188)			7		
			Off		

<

Vehicle specifications

AVALON_HV_U (OM41457U)

n

Item	Function	Default set- ting	Customized setting	1	2
	Light sensor sensitivity	Level 3	Level 1 to 5	0	0
Automatic light con-	Time elapsed before	30 seconds	0 seconds	0	
trol system (→P. 191)	headlights automatically turn off after doors are closed		60 seconds		0
			90 seconds		
Lights (→P. 191,	Daytime running light system	On	Off	0	0
195)	Automatic high beam*	On	Off	—	0

8-2. Customization

Item	Function	Default set- ting	Customized setting	1	2	
	Interior lights illumina- tion control	On	Off	_	0	
			Off			
	Time elapsed before interior lights turn off	15 seconds	7.5 seconds	0	0	
	3		30 seconds			
	Center console spot light	On	Off	—	0	
	Operation when the doors are unlocked	On	Off		0	
	Operation after the power switch turned off	On	Off		0	
	Operation when you approach the vehicle with the electronic key on your person	On	Off		0	
Illumination	Ambient lights*	On	Off	—	0	
(→P. 274)	Outer foot lights*	On	Off	—	0	
	Time elapsed before the outer foot lights turn off*	15 seconds	Off		0	
			7.5 seconds	0		
			30 seconds			
	Enable/disable opera- tion of the outer foot lights when you approach the vehicle with the electronic key	On	Off		0	∞ Vehicle spe
	on your person* Enable/disable opera- tion of the outer foot lights when the doors are unlocked with the power door lock switch*	On	Off		0	specifications
Instrument panel (→P. 94)	Instrument panel light auto dimmer control	Level 3	Level 1 to 5	_	0	

474 8-2. Customization

Item	Function	Default set- ting	Customized setting	1	2
Automatic air condi- tioning sys- tem $(\rightarrow P. 262)$	A/C auto switch opera- tion	Auto	Manual	0	0
Touch button (on the center panel) $(\rightarrow P. 102,$ 262)	Button sensor sensitivity	Level 3	Level 1 to 3		0
	Reverse operation	On	Off		0
Rear	Time elapsed before the reverse operation fea-	0.7 seconds	0 second		
sunshade [*] (→P. 299)			0.9 seconds		0
	ture activates		1.2 seconds		

*: If equipped

A CAUTION

During customization

As the hybrid system needs to be operating during customization, ensure that the vehicle is parked in a place with adequate ventilation. In a closed area such as a garage, exhaust gases including harmful carbon monoxide (CO) may collect and enter the vehicle. This may lead to death or a serious health hazard.

During customization

To prevent 12-volt battery discharge, ensure that the hybrid system is operating while customizing features.

Items to initialize

The following items must be initialized for normal system operation after such cases as the maintenance being performed on the vehicle:

Item	When to initialize	Reference
Message indicating mainte- nance is required	 After the maintenance is per- formed 	P. 329
Tire pressure warning sys- tem	 When changing the tire size When changing the tire inflation pressure by changing traveling speed or load weight, etc. 	P. 356

AVALON_HV_U (OM41457U)

AVALON_HV_U (OM41457U)



Reporting safety defects for U.S. owners

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying Toyota Motor Sales, U.S.A., Inc. (Toll-free: 1-800-331-4331).

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Toyota Motor Sales, U.S.A., Inc.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to *http:// www.safercar.gov*; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 1200 New Jersey Ave, S.E., Washington, DC 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from *http://www.safercar.gov*.



What to do if	
(Troubleshooting)	480
Alphabetical index	486

For details of equipment related to the audio/navigation system, refer to the "NAVIGATION AND MULTIMEDIA SYSTEM OWNER'S MANUAL".

480 What to do if... (Troubleshooting)

What to do if... (Troubleshooting)

If you have a problem, check the following before contacting your Toyota dealer.

The doors cannot be locked, unlocked, opened or closed



You lose your keys

- If you lose your mechanical keys, new genuine mechanical keys can be made by your Toyota dealer. (→P. 109)
- If you lose your electronic keys, the risk of vehicle theft increases significantly. Contact your Toyota dealer immediately. (→P. 110)



The doors cannot be locked or unlocked

- Is the electronic key battery weak or depleted? (\rightarrow P. 369)
- Is the power switch in ON mode?
 When locking the doors, turn the power switch off. (→P. 178)
- Is the electronic key left inside the vehicle? When locking the doors, make sure that you have the electronic key on your person.
- The function may not operate properly due to the condition of the radio wave. (→P. 120)



The rear door cannot be opened

 Is the child-protector lock set? The rear door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle when the lock is set. Open the rear door from outside and then unlock the child-protector lock. (→P. 130)



The trunk lid is closed with the electronic key left inside

● The function to prevent the electronic key from being left inside the trunk will operate and you can open the trunk as usual. Take the key out from the trunk. (→P. 112)

482 What to do if... (Troubleshooting)

If you think something is wrong



The hybrid system does not start

- Did you press the power switch while firmly depressing the brake pedal? (→P. 177)
- Is the shift lever in P? (\rightarrow P. 180)
- Is the electronic key anywhere detectable inside the vehicle? (→P. 114)
- Is the steering wheel unlocked? (\rightarrow P. 180)
- Is the electronic key battery weak or depleted? In this case, the hybrid system can be started in a temporary way. (→P. 431)
- Is the 12-volt battery discharged? (\rightarrow P. 432)



The shift lever cannot be shifted from P even if you depress the brake pedal

• Is the power switch in ON mode?

If you cannot release the shift lever by depressing the brake pedal with the power switch in ON mode (\rightarrow P. 429)



The steering wheel cannot be turned after the hybrid system is stopped

It is locked automatically to prevent theft of the vehicle.
 (→P. 180)



The windows do not open or close by operating the power window switches

 Is the window lock switch pressed? The power window except for the one at the driver's seat cannot be operated if the window lock switch is pressed. (→P. 152)



The power switch is turned off automatically

 The auto power off function will be operated if the vehicle is left in ACCESSORY or ON mode (the hybrid system is not operating) for a period of time. (→P. 179)



A warning buzzer sounds during driving

- The seat belt reminder light is flashing
 Are the driver and the front passenger wearing the seat belts? (→P. 407)
- The brake system warning light is on

Is the parking brake released? (\rightarrow P. 189)

Depending on the situation, other types of warning buzzer may also sound. (\rightarrow P. 404, 414)

484 What to do if... (Troubleshooting)

An alarm is activated and the horn sounds

- Did anyone inside the vehicle open a door during setting the alarm?
 - The sensor detects it and the alarm sounds. (\rightarrow P. 81)

To stop the alarm, turn the power switch to ON mode or start the hybrid system.



 Is the message displayed on the multi-information display? Check the message on the multi-information display.



A warning light turns on or a warning message is displayed

- When a warning light turns on, refer to P. 404.
- When a warning message is displayed, perform the correction procedure appropriate to the message.

When a problem has occurred



If you have a flat tire

● Stop the vehicle in a safe place and replace the flat tire with the spare tire. (→P. 415)



The vehicle becomes stuck

● Try the procedure for when the vehicle becomes stuck in mud, dirt, or snow. (→P. 440)

Alphabetical index

A
A/C
Air conditioning filter
Automatic air conditioning
system 262
ABS (Anti-lock Brake
System) 232
Function232
Warning light 405
Air conditioning filter 367
Air conditioning system
Air conditioning filter
Automatic air conditioning
system 262
Airbags
Airbag operating conditions 44
Airbag precautions
for your child39
Airbag warning light 405
Correct driving posture
Curtain shield airbag
operating conditions
Curtain shield airbag
precautions42
Front passenger occupant
classification system47
General airbag precautions 39
Locations of airbags
Modification and disposal
of airbags43
Side airbag operating
conditions44
Side airbag precautions
Side and curtain shield
airbags operating
conditions44
Side and curtain shield
airbags precautions
SRS airbags36

Alarm 81
Alarm 81
Warning buzzer 404
Anchor brackets 58
Antennas
(smart key system) 113
Anti-lock Brake
System (ABS) 232
Function232
Warning light 405
Approach warning (dynamic
radar cruise control) 221
Armrest 298
Assist grips
Audio system [*]
Automatic headlight leveling
system 194
Automatic high beam 195
Automatic light control
system 191
AUX port [*]
Auxiliary boxes 281

В
Back-up lights
Replacing light bulbs
Wattage 452
Battery (12-volt battery) 350
If the 12-volt battery is
discharged432
Preparing and checking before
winter256
Warning light 405
Battery (traction battery)73
Blind Spot Monitor (BSM) 245
Brake
Fluid
Parking brake 189
Regenerative braking71
Warning light 404, 406
Brake assist 232
Break-in tips161
Brightness control
Instrument panel light
control93
BSM (Blind Spot Monitor) 245

C	
Care 32	2, 325
Aluminum wheels	323
Exterior	
Interior	
Seat belts	
Cargo capacity	
Cargo net	286
Caution label	73
Chains	258
Child restraint system	54
Booster seats, definition	55
Booster seats, installation	64
Convertible seats, definition	า 55
Convertible seats,	
installation	61
Front passenger occupant	
classification system	
Infant seats, definition	
Infant seats, installation	61
Installing CRS	
with LATCH anchors	59
Installing CRS with	
seat belts	61
Installing CRS	
with top tether strap	65

*: Refer to the "NAVIGATION AND MULTIMEDIA SYSTEM OWNER'S MANUAL".

1

. . . .

Child-protectors130
Child safety 53
12-volt battery
precautions
Airbag precautions
Child restraint system54
How your child should wear
the seat belt32
Installing child restraints 58
Moon roof precautions 158
Power window lock switch 152
Power window precautions154
Rear door child-protectors 130
Removed electronic
key battery precautions 370
Seat belt extender
precautions35
Seat belt precautions 57
Seat heater precautions 297
Trunk precautions 134
Cleaning 322, 325
Aluminum wheels323
Exterior322
Interior325
Seat belts326
Clock289
Coat hooks301
Compass316
Condenser347

Console box 279
Consumption screen102
Coolant 345
Capacity 449
Checking 345
Preparing and checking
before winter 256
Cooling system 345
Engine overheating 436
Hybrid system overheating 436
Cruise control
Cruise control 211
Dynamic radar cruise
control 215
Cup holders 280
Curtain shield airbags
Customizable features 469

D
Daytime running light
system193
Defogger
Front windshield267
Outside rear view mirrors 273
Rear window 273
Dimensions 444
Dinghy towing176
Display
Cruise control211
Dynamic radar
cruise control 215
Multi-information display96
Trip information97
Warning message 414
Do-it-yourself
maintenance 335
Door courtesy lights
Wattage 452
Door lock
Doors 129
Smart key system 111
Wireless remote control 126

Doors 129
Automatic door locking
and unlocking system 131
Door glasses 152
Door lock 129
Open door warning buzzer 115
Open door warning light 406
Outside rear view mirrors 149
Rear door child-protector 130
Driver's seat position
memory 138
Driving
Driving

Eco drive mode230
EDR (Event data recorder) 11
Electric motor
(traction motor) 69
Electric Power
Steering (EPS) 232
Function232
Warning light 405
Electronic key 108
Battery-saving function 119
If the electronic key does not
operate properly 430
Replacing the battery

F

Emergency flashers
If the 12-volt battery is
discharged 432
If the electronic key
does not operate
properly
If the hybrid system will not start 427
If the shift lever
cannot be shifted from P 429
If the trunk opener is not
actuated 134
If the warning buzzer sounds
If the warning light
turns on
If the warning message
is displayed 414
If you have a flat tire
If you think something
is wrong
If your vehicle becomes
stuck
If your vehicle has to be
stopped in an emergency 399
If your vehicle needs
to be towed
If your vehicle overheats 436

Energy monitor102 Engine
ACCESSORY mode 178
Compartment 341
Engine switch 177
Hood338
How to start the
hybrid system 177
Identification number 445
Ignition switch
(power switch) 177
Overheating 436
Power switch177
Engine coolant
Capacity449
Checking345
Preparing and checking
before winter256
Engine coolant temperature
gauge91
Engine oil342
Capacity447
Capacity447 Checking
Checking

AVALON_HV_U (OM41457U)

F
Flat tire415
Floor mats26
Fluid
Brake451
Hybrid transmission 450
Washer 349
Fog lights 200
Replacing light bulbs
Switch
Wattage 452
Front passenger occupant
classification system 47
Front personal lights275
Front seats136
Adjustment136
Cleaning325
Correct driving posture
Driving position memory 138
Head restraints 143
Power easy access
system 138
Seat heaters295
Seat position memory 138
Seat ventilators 295

Front side marker lights 19	91
Light switch19	91
Replacing light bulbs 39	93
Front turn signal lights 18	88
Replacing light bulbs 38	88
Turn signal lever 18	88
Wattage 45	52
Fuel	46
Capacity44	46
Fuel gauge	91
Information4	53
Refueling20	06
Type206, 44	46
Warning light 40	07
Fuel consumption	97
Fuel filler door 20	06
If the fuel filler door	
cannot be opened	09
Refueling	06
Fuses 37	

493

G	
Garage door opener	303
Gauges	91
Glove box	278
Grocery bag hooks	286
н	
Head restraints	143
••	
Head restraints	191
Head restraints Headlights	191
Head restraints Headlights Automatic high beam	191 195
Head restraints Headlights Automatic high beam Discharge headlights	191 195 396

Wattage 452

Heaters

Hooks

Horn 190
Hybrid battery
(traction battery)73
Hybrid battery
(traction battery)
air vents74
Hybrid system 69
Emergency shut off system 74
Energy monitor/
consumption screen 102
EV drive mode 183
High voltage components 73
Hybrid System Indicator 94
Hybrid system precautions 73
Hybrid vehicle driving tips 254
If the hybrid system
will not start 427
Overheating436
Power (ignition) switch 177
Starting the hybrid system 177
Vehicle proximity notification
system70
Hybrid System Indicator
Hybrid transmission 185
If the shift lever
cannot be shifted from P 429
S mode 186

I/M test334
Identification
Engine 445
Vehicle 445
Ignition switch
(power switch)177
Illuminated entry system 276
Immobilizer system79
Indicators 89
Initialization
Maintenance 329
Tire pressure
warning system
Inside rear view mirror 147
Instrument panel
light control93
Interior lights274

J

Jack	
Positioning a floor jack	339
Vehicle-equipped jack	416
Jack handle	416
Jam protection function	
Moon roof	156
Power windows	153

Κ

Keyless entry 111
Smart key system 111
Wireless remote control 126
Keys108
Battery-Saving Function 119
Electronic key 108
If the electronic key
does not operate
properly 430
Key number plate 108
Keyless entry 111, 126
Mechanical key 108
Power switch 177
Replacing the battery 369
Warning buzzer 115
Wireless remote control
key 126
Knee airbags 37

AVALON_HV_U (OM41457U)

LATCH anchors59
Lever
Auxiliary catch lever
Hood lock release lever 338
Internal trunk release lever 133
Shift lever 185
Turn signal lever 188
Wiper lever201
License plate lights 191
Light switch 191
Replacing light bulbs
Wattage 452
Light bulbs
Replacing384
Wattage 452
Lights
Automatic high beam 195
Fog light switch 200
Headlight switch 191
Illuminated entry system 276
Interior light 275
Interior lights list274
Personal lights 275
Replacing light bulbs
Trunk light133
Turn signal lever 188
Vanity lights 288
Wattage 452
Load capacity174
Lock steering column180
Luggage net 286
Luggage security system 133

M Maintenance

Do-it-yourself maintenance.	335
General maintenance	330
Maintenance requirements.	444
Resetting the message	
indicating maintenance	
is required	328
Malfunction indicator lamp	405
Master warning light	407
Meter	91
Indicators	89
Instrument panel	
light control	93
Meters	91
Multi-information display	96
Warning lights	87
Mirrors	
Inside rear view mirror	147
Outside rear view mirror	
defoggers	273
Outside rear view mirrors	
Vanity mirrors	288
Moon roof	155
Jam protection function	156
Operation	
Multi-information display	96
Cruise control	211
Dynamic radar cruise	
control	
Energy monitor	
Switching the display	
Tachometer	
Trip information	
Warning message	414

Navigation system* Noise from under vehicle......8 0 Odometer.....91 Oil Engine oil 447 Opener Outer foot lights......274 Outside rear view mirrors 149 Adjusting and folding 149 Blind spot monitor 245 Linked mirror function when reversing 150 Mirror position memory 138 Outside rear view mirror defoggers 273 Overheating......436

Parking brake..... 189 Operation......189 Parking brake engaged warning buzzer..... 404 Parking lights..... 191 Light switch..... 191 Replacing light bulbs 393 PCS (Pre-Collision System)......239 PCS OFF switch 240 Warning light..... 406 Personal lights...... 275 Power control unit.....73 Power control unit coolant 345 Capacity...... 449 Preparing and checking before winter 256 Power easy access system......138 Power outlets...... 292 Power steering (Electric Power Steering system) 232 Warning light..... 405 Power switch 177 Power windows 152 Jam protection function 153 Operation.....152 Window lock switch 152 Pre-Collision System (PCS).... 239 PCS OFF switch 240 Warning light..... 406

Ρ

R
Radar cruise control (dynamic
radar cruise control) 215
Radiator 347
Rear personal lights 275
Rear seat heaters296
Rear sunshade299
Rear turn signal lights188
Replacing light bulbs
Turn signal lever188
Wattage 452
Rear view mirror
Inside rear view mirror 147
Outside rear view mirrors 149
Rear view monitor system [*]
Rear window defoggers 273
Refueling 206
Capacity446
Fuel types 446
If the fuel filler door
cannot be opened209
Opening the fuel tank cap 208
Regenerative braking71
Replacing
Electronic key battery
Fuses
Light bulbs 382
Tires415
Reporting safety defects
for U.S. owners478
Resetting the message
indicating maintenance
is required329
Road accident cautions76

Safety Connect 310
Seat belts 30
Adjusting the seat belt
Automatic Locking
Retractor 32
Child restraint system
installation61
Cleaning and maintaining
the seat belt 326
Emergency Locking
Retractor 32
How to wear your seat belt 30
How your child should wear
the seat belt32
Pre-collision seat belts
Pregnant women, proper
seat belt use33
Reminder light and buzzer 407
Seat belt extender 32
Seat belt pretensioners
SRS warning light 405
Seat heaters 295
Seat position memory 138
Seat ventilators 295
Seating capacity 174

*: Refer to the "NAVIGATION AND MULTIMEDIA SYSTEM OWNER'S MANUAL".

Seats 136
Adjustment136
Adjustment precautions 137
Child seats/child restraint
system installation58
Cleaning325
Driving position memory 138
Head restraints143
Power easy access
system 137
Properly sitting in the seat 28
Seat heaters 295
Seat position memory 138
Seat ventilators 295
Sensor
Automatic headlight
system 193
Automatic high beam 195
Humidity sensor272
Inside rear view mirror 148
Radar sensor 224, 240, 247
Rain-sensing windshield
wipers204
Service plug73
Service reminder
indicators86

Shift lever	. 185
Hybrid transmission	. 185
If the shift lever	
cannot be shifted from P	. 429
Shift lock system	. 429
Side airbags	37
Side marker lights	. 191
Light switch	. 191
Replacing light bulbs	. 393
Side mirrors	. 149
Adjusting and folding	. 149
BSM (Blind spot monitor)	. 245
Linked mirror function	
when reversing	. 150
Mirror position memory	. 138
Side turn signal lights	. 188
Replacing light bulbs	. 393
Turn signal lever	. 188
Smart key system	. 111
Antenna location	. 113
Entry functions	. 111
Starting the hybrid system	. 177
Snow tires	

Spare tire 415
Inflation pressure451
Storage location416
Spark plug449
Specifications 444
Speedometer91
Sport mode230
Steering lock180
Column lock release
Steering wheel 146
Stop lights
Replacing light bulbs
Storage feature 277
Stuck
If the vehicle becomes
stuck
Sun shade
Rear299
Roof 156
Sun visors288

Switches

BSM (Blind spot monitor)
switch 245
Compass switch 316
Cruise control switch 211, 215
"DISP" button97
Door lock switches 129
Driving mode select switch 230
Driving position memory
switches 138
Emergency flashers switch 398
EV drive mode switch 183
Fog light switch 200
Garage door opener
switches 303
Ignition switch 177
Light switch191
Moon roof switches 155
Outside rear view mirror
switches 149

PCS OFF switch240	
Power door lock switch 129	
Power switch177	
Power window switches 152	
Rear sunshade switch 299	
Rear window and outside	
rear view mirror defoggers	
switch 273	
Seat heater switches 295	
Seat ventilator switches 295	
"SOS" button310	
Tire pressure warning reset	
switch 356	
Trunk opener main switch 133	
Trunk opener switch 132	
Vehicle-to-vehicle distance	
button218	
VSC/TRAC OFF switch 233	
Window lock switch 152	
Windshield wipers	
and washer switch	

Т	
Tachometer	186
Tail lights	191
Light switch	191
Replacing light bulbs	393
Theft deterrent system	
Alarm	81
Immobilizer system	79
Tire inflation pressure	451
Maintenance data	451
Warning light	407
Tire information	456
Glossary	463
Size	459
Tire identification number	458
Uniform Tire Quality	
Grading	461
Tire pressure warning	
system	355
Function	355
Initializing	355
Installing tire pressure	
warning valves and	
transmitters	355
Registering ID codes	357
Tire pressure warning reset	
switch	
Warning light	407

Tires	
Chains258	
Checking354	
If you have a flat tire	
Inflation pressure451	
Information456	
Replacing415	
Rotating tires354	
Size451	
Snow tires 259	
Spare tire 415	
Tire pressure warning	
system 355	
Warning light 407	
Tools	
Top tether strap 65	
Total load capacity174	
Towing	
Dinghy towing 176	
Emergency towing 400	
Trailer towing 175	
TOYOTA PARKING ASSIST	
MONITOR*	
TRAC (Traction Control) 232	
Traction battery	
(hybrid battery)73	
Traction motor	
(electric motor)69	
Transmission 185	
Driving mode select switch 230	
Hybrid transmission 185	
If the shift lever cannot be	
shifted from P 429	
S mode 186	

Trip information97
Trip meters91
Trunk 132
Internal trunk release lever 133
Luggage security system 133
Smart key system 112
Trunk features 286
Trunk grip 132
Trunk light 133
Trunk opener main switch 133
Trunk opener switch 132
Wireless remote control 126
Trunk light
Trunk light133
Wattage 452
Turn signal lights 188
Replacing light bulbs 388, 390
Turn signal lever 188
Wattage 452

*: Refer to the "NAVIGATION AND MULTIMEDIA SYSTEM OWNER'S MANUAL".

U			
I	USB port [*]		
V			
Τ	Vanity lights		
	Vanity lights 288		
	Wattage 452		
	Vanity mirrors 288		
	Vehicle data recordings 10		
	Vehicle identification		
	number 445		
	Vehicle proximity notification		
	system70		
	Vehicle Stability Control		
	(VSC)		
	Ventilators		
	(seat ventilators) 295		
	VSC		
	(Vehicle Stability Control) 232		
1			

W

221
404
186
239
407
. 87
405
404
405
405
405
407
405
407
406
404
406
407
406
405
407
414

Washan 004	
Washer	
Checking349)
Preparing and checking	
before winter 256	j
Switch 201	
Washing and waxing 322	2
Weight	
Cargo capacity174	ł
Load limits174	ŀ
Weight444	Ļ
Wheels	
Replacing wheels	ł
Size	
Window glasses152	2
Window lock switch 152	2
Windows152	2
Power windows152	2
Rear window defogger 273	5
Windshield wipers 201	
Intermittent windshield wipers	
with interval adjuster	
Rain-sensing windshield	
wipers203	5
Winter driving tips 256	;
Wireless remote	
control key126	;
Battery-Saving Function 119)
Locking/Unlocking	
Replacing the battery	

*: Refer to the "NAVIGATION AND MULTIMEDIA SYSTEM OWNER'S MANUAL".

